- 1 Thursday, 8 November 2012
- 2 (10.06 am)
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
- 4 The stenographer is unwell today, so today's
- 5 proceedings are going to be recorded and we'll
- 6 get a transcript hopefully at some point
- 7 tomorrow, but for today we'll have to go back to
- 8 the old-fashioned method of writing down notes as
- 9 the evidence goes along. So you will not be
- 10 getting a live note as we go along today. I hope
- 11 you have all filled your pens. Mr Reid.
- 12 MR REID: Thank you, Mr Chairman. If I can call Ms
- 13 Sally Ramsay, please.
- 14 MRS SALLY RAMSAY (sworn)
- 15 Questions from MR REID
- 16 MR REID: Have a seat. Just to begin, is it Mrs
- 17 Ramsay or Ms Ramsay?
- 18 A. Mrs.
- 19 Q. Mrs Ramsay, thank you. Mrs Ramsay, you've made
- 20 one final report for the inquiry, which is dated
- 21 14th June 2012, and there's a reference 231-002-
- 22 001. Would you like to adopt that as your
- 23 evidence before the inquiry?
- 24 A. I would.
- 25 Q. Thank you. If we can move just to your CV and

- 1 your experience and bring up 231-002-038 and 039
- 2 alongside that, please. We can see there that
- 3 you've been a registered adult nurse since 1972,
- 4 a registered children's nurse from 1974, and you
- 5 were a nurse manager of the paediatric and
- 6 neonatal intensive care unit at Guy's Hospital,
- 7 London, from 1986, is that right?
- 8 A. I was.
- 9 Q. You've had various other nursing manager roles.
- 10 You became director of nursing at Great Ormond
- 11 Street Hospital for Children in 1994?
- 12 A. I did.
- 13 Q. You were in that job until 2002, and since 2003
- 14 you've been a self-employed children's nursing
- 15 advisor, is that right?
- 16 A. That's right.
- 17 Q. Thank you. Can you just explain for us what do
- 18 you do in your role as a self-employed children's
- 19 nursing advisor?
- 20 A. Varied things over the years. I suppose helping
- 21 people where they need some expertise in issues
- 22 to do with the care of children, and so that's
- 23 varied from -- and not always children. I have
- 24 done some things with adults as well. I've
- 25 helped implement clinical governance in a general

- 1 children's ward in a general hospital. I've
- 2 written several guidance documents and standards
- 3 documents for the Royal College of Nursing, and
- 4 latterly I've been part of the team that's been
- 5 reviewing the children's heart surgery centres.
- 6 So it's been giving advice to people.
- 7 Q. If we turn over to page 40 we can see a number of
- 8 your publications; the documents you've written
- 9 for the Royal College of Nursing.
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: So you're not retired at all?
- 12 A. Not yet. Getting there I think.
- 13 MR REID: Can I ask, we're obviously concerned with
- 14 nursing care in October 1996. How familiar are
- 15 you with nursing practice in 1996?
- 16 A. Well, at the time I was Director of Nursing at
- 17 Great Ormond Street and I had very close contact
- 18 with the clinical areas because that was the
- 19 major part of my role was to facilitate and, one
- 20 could say ensure good nursing practice.
- 21 So I also throughout my career have tried to
- 22 maintain some direct clinical expertise and so,
- 23 as Director of Nursing, I did spend some time a
- 24 couple of times a year actually as a staff nurse
- on the ward; I tried to keep a feel of it because

- 1 I was conscious, and I did have something
- 2 published many years ago, called "up-to-date but
- 3 out of touch" whereby it's very easy for people
- 4 to talk about it and not really have a full
- 5 understanding of how it feels to be a staff
- 6 nurse.
- 7 So I tried to maintain some of that, but you
- 8 can never go back to being that staff nurse
- 9 really. So I feel that in 1996 I had a good feel
- 10 of what was going on in a clinical environment,
- 11 through some direct observation but also close
- 12 contact with ward sisters and clinical staff.
- 13 O. Thank you. We've heard the evidence to the
- 14 inquiry of several of the nurses; that was mainly
- on 29th October and 30th October. Have you had
- 16 the opportunity to see the transcripts of the
- 17 evidence that the nurses gave?
- 18 A. Yes, I've read the transcripts.
- 19 Q. Just as an overall question, what would be your
- 20 overall impression of the evidence that the
- 21 nurses gave? What, after reading the
- 22 transcripts, was your general impression?
- 23 A. My general impression was that although most of
- them couldn't remember very much of the events I
- 25 felt there was some agreement with some of the

- 1 things that I'd said. When they'd been exposed
- 2 to the same sort of evidence as I had, I felt
- 3 that they'd seemed to me, in the main, to have
- 4 come to some of the same conclusions.
- 5 Q. We'll come to each of those conclusions in turn.
- 6 If I can also bring up 096-024-183, please. This
- 7 is the expert nursing advisor report, in the
- 8 circumstances surrounding the death of Claire
- 9 Roberts, prepared by Susan Chapman for the Police
- 10 Service of Northern Ireland, and this is dated
- 11 24th March 2008. As it says there, it's Ms
- 12 Chapman's report she was asked to produce by the
- 13 police. Have you had the opportunity to see that
- 14 report?
- 15 A. I have seen the report.
- 16 Q. You'll be aware, if you can turn to the
- 17 conclusions at page 191 of that document, her
- 18 overall conclusion was that she finds only minor
- 19 deficiencies in the nursing care given to Claire
- 20 Roberts, and she would consider none of those to
- 21 represent a failure in nursing care, given the
- 22 diagnosis and management prescribed by the
- 23 medical team. She goes on to note that it was an
- 24 overall lack of recognition of the seriousness of
- 25 Claire's clinical condition. Her level of

- 1 consciousness was monitored and recorded by the
- 2 nursing staff, and it was the role of the medical
- 3 staff to act on these results.
- 4 She was reviewed only seven occasions by
- 5 members of the medical team before her transfer
- 6 to intensive care, but at no time was additional
- 7 monitoring, observation or treatment requested
- 8 and, therefore, she found the care delivered by
- 9 the nursing staff acceptable by the standards
- 10 expected in 1996.
- 11 Would it be fair to say, having seen Sue
- 12 Chapman's report, that you may be a little more
- 13 critical in certain areas than Ms Chapman?
- 14 A. Yes. But I think that might be due to the
- 15 approach.
- 16 Q. Firstly, do you know Sue Chapman?
- 17 A. I do.
- 18 Q. And you're familiar with her work?
- 19 A. Yes, yes. I've known her since she was -- she's
- 20 a nurse consultant now but I've known her for a
- 21 long time.
- 22 Q. You're saying there might have been a difference
- 23 in approach. Can you explain that for us?
- 24 A. Well, her report was commissioned by somebody
- 25 different to my report. I did read her report in

- 1 the beginning, but what I tend to do is look
- 2 through all the papers to get my own view before
- 3 I'm biased by anybody else's and then perhaps do
- 4 a little bit of compare and contrast. And so her
- 5 approach presumably, because it was done by the
- 6 Police Service, may have been to see if there was
- 7 anything that stood out in terms of major
- 8 failings in nursing that could have contributed
- 9 to Claire's death.
- 10 My approach was to go through everything, I
- 11 suppose, with a critical eye, all the aspects of
- 12 care, to then see what that added up to at the
- 13 end, because there wasn't one major incident
- 14 which I needed to focus on; it was a series of
- 15 events so that was possibly a different approach.
- 16 Q. So if I can be clear from what you've said, do
- 17 you think there were no major failings, as Sue
- 18 Chapman has said in her report, but that you
- 19 might be critical of some other elements?
- 20 A. Well, major failings. I have a concern that a
- 21 child that was so sick was still in the middle of
- 22 a general children's ward, and so the failure to
- 23 notice that a child is sick in this case did have
- 24 a very, you know, disastrous outcome. So I would
- 25 say that was a failure, because I do have

- 1 concerns that she was still being nursed in the
- 2 middle of a general ward throughout the day.
- 3 Q. I think there are two points I have understood
- 4 from your report: (1) Claire should have been
- 5 moved to one-to-one nursing at an earlier stage
- 6 but is being nursed in the middle of a general
- 7 ward, is that a reference to that she should have
- 8 been moved to intensive care earlier or moved to
- 9 a side ward?
- 10 A. Well, I think it could have been either. I think
- 11 possibly at the time it was you're on a general
- 12 ward, or you're in a PICU, because facilities for
- 13 high dependency nursing weren't perhaps as
- 14 developed as they maybe now because lots of
- 15 general hospitals would have a high dependency
- 16 area where they could have all the sick children
- 17 together and have a few more staff looking after
- 18 them. I think that there was a failure to
- 19 recognise the level of dependency that she had,
- 20 so she was just being nursed along with everybody
- 21 else in a general ward. High dependency could
- 22 have been provided for her in a cubicle or in a
- 23 PICU environment.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: We'd better not jump ahead too much
- 25 because I think you're going to be coming to

- 1 that.
- 2 MR REID: I might actually jump to that now. If we
- 3 bring up your report at 231-002-031, it's
- 4 slightly out of sequence but I think you've
- 5 identified it as what you consider to be the
- 6 major failing; I think we should address it now.
- 7 You say there in the second paragraph, after
- 8 quoting the source, that a coma score of 8 or
- 9 below was generally accepted as a definition of
- 10 coma. You say that you think a score of 8,
- 11 combined with a need for complex intravenous
- 12 therapy, should have prompted discussion between
- 13 nursing and medical staff regarding admission to
- 14 PICU and, given Claire's level of consciousness,
- 15 diagnosed anti-epileptic treatment and level of
- 16 nursing dependency, you believe she should have
- 17 been admitted to an intensive care unit? This
- 18 should have been at around 3.00 pm, when the coma
- 19 score of 7, and midazolam infusion was planned to
- 20 start shortly afterwards. However, you say,
- 21 admission to PICU was usually a decision made by
- 22 senior doctors and, therefore, you were unable to
- 23 give an opinion on whether there was sufficient
- 24 medical grounds to require such an admission, and
- 25 you reiterate your opinion that her nursing care

- 1 needs at the time were above those that could be
- 2 reasonably provided on a busy general ward.
- 3 That's a fair summary of what you just said, is
- 4 that right?
- 5 A. That's right.
- 6 Q. In fact, Ward Sister Pollock seems to agree with
- 7 you, if we bring up her transcript of 30th
- 8 October 2012, page 182. I asked her:
- 9 "From your experience and your look at the
- 10 nursing and clinical notes, when would you have
- 11 expected Claire to have been admitted to PICU?"
- 12 And she said:
- "It's difficult to say. I'm aware that Dr
- 14 Webb reviewed Claire on a number of occasions
- 15 during the afternoon of the Tuesday, but when I
- 16 look at a Glasgow Coma Scale of 9 at 1.00 pm, and
- 17 then it is 7, at I think around 2.30, I'd be very
- 18 concerned at that point. [Let me turn over the
- 19 page.] There is a discussion around what level
- 20 of care she did require, could that be delivered
- 21 at ward level or did she require to be nursed in
- 22 another area in the hospital or what should the
- 23 plan of care be?"
- 24 And she goes on to say, in answer to the
- 25 Chairman's question, that that would have been

- 1 intensive care.
- 2 First of all, can I ask you, what is the
- 3 difference in the level of care you would receive
- 4 in PICU compared to the general ward?
- 5 A. On a general ward one nurse would look after
- 6 several patients. In PICU there would be, in the
- 7 main, one-to-one nursing, or if the child is not
- 8 ventilated then it could be that two children,
- 9 with a high level of dependency, could be looked
- 10 after by one nurse. So there would be more
- 11 nursing and continuous nursing, so that even if
- 12 the child's care was being shared with another
- 13 child, there would be a nurse in that area all
- 14 the time. Whereas, on a general ward, the nurse
- 15 would possibly be off fetching, carrying,
- 16 answering the phone, going to another child in a
- 17 cubicle in the next bay, so the child wouldn't be
- 18 within their sight all the time. And the other
- 19 element would be there would be more
- 20 sophisticated monitoring, probably.
- 21 Q. So on our first point, are you saying that
- 22 physically there would always be a nurse in the
- 23 room?
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 Q. While on the general ward I think we've heard

- 1 that the majority of nurses had a four-bed bay
- 2 and a two-bed bay; a maximum of six patients to
- 3 look after. You would have a maximum of two
- 4 patients to look after in paediatric intensive
- 5 care.
- 6 A. I would think that would be the maximum, yes.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: But it's not just as simple as the
- 8 nurses on a general ward looking after six
- 9 patients, because they're also helping each other
- 10 out from time-to-time.
- 11 A. Yes, yes.
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: So the six is accurate but it's not as
- 13 limited as that. In the end, the nurse actually
- 14 does more than just look after six defined
- 15 patients on a general ward.
- 16 A. Yes, because there would be other things, like
- 17 phones ringing and people coming to the ward
- 18 asking them, distracting them.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Or two nurses administering a drug?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, thank you.
- 22 MR REID: Do things like phones going off, or having
- 23 to go and get a drug or administer a drug, does
- 24 that not also happen in paediatric intensive
- 25 care?

- 1 A. Yes, but the way that paediatric intensive care
- 2 would have worked would be that people didn't
- 3 usually leave the child. The child needed to be
- 4 looked at and observed, and so there would be
- 5 some additional help; a healthcare assistant or
- 6 some sort of non-registered professional whose
- 7 job it was to supply the people at the bedside
- 8 with what they needed.
- 9 Q. So the nurse would always physically be there and
- 10 then would seek assistance from someone to go off
- 11 and do the other jobs?
- 12 A. Yes, or if they were in an open area and had to
- 13 leave their child to go and get something, which
- 14 sometimes you might have to go and get medicines
- 15 and things, you would say to somebody nearby,
- 16 "Can you just keep an eye on my patient while I
- go off to get X, Y and Z?"
- 18 Q. You also said the other thing, apart from just
- 19 the fact that a nurse would be physically there
- 20 all the time, was that more intensive monitoring
- 21 could be done. What sort of monitoring do you
- 22 mean?
- 23 A. Heart rate and respiratory rate monitor.
- Q. Just vital signs or other ailments?
- 25 A. Well, vitals signs and blood -- probably blood

- 1 pressure.
- 2 Q. What about central nervous system observations?
- 3 A. Well, yes, they would be done, particularly for a
- 4 child with altered consciousness.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Isn't the fundamental difference in
- 6 what's tragically lacking in Claire's case is
- 7 that, if she had been moved into intensive care,
- 8 it would have been a recognition that she was
- 9 very seriously ill and the fact that she wasn't
- 10 moved into an intensive care raises a major
- 11 question about whether the severity of her
- 12 illness was recognised?
- 13 A. Yes. I think that's fair.
- 14 MR REID: Can I ask you then about the criteria for
- 15 moving into paediatric intensive care? First of
- 16 all, you said at around 3.00 pm -- and Staff
- 17 Nurse Pollock has said around a similar time -- I
- 18 think you said the trigger for that really was
- 19 the combination of the Glasgow Coma Scale and the
- 20 medication being administered, the phenytoin and
- 21 the midazolam. Would the phenytoin alone or
- 22 midazolam be sufficient, in your opinion, to
- 23 warrant admission to PICU?
- 24 A. Some of that depends on what the nurses were used
- 25 to giving on that ward. So if they were

- 1 regularly looking after children who were in
- 2 status, who were having phenytoin, then it might
- 3 be that they could manage that, although I would
- 4 still suggest that the Glasgow Coma Score was
- 5 perhaps of a level whereby, if it had gone down
- 6 any further, she might have got it. They might
- 7 have known that she could need ventilating, and
- 8 so would be better placed in an area where that
- 9 could be facilitated.
- 10 So I think, depending on their previous
- 11 experience, giving a medicine to a child that's
- 12 fitting might have been within their area of
- 13 expertise. I think it unlikely that the use of
- 14 continuous midazolam was something that was done
- 15 regularly at that time outside an intensive care
- 16 environment.
- 17 Q. We will get to the medication later on, but I
- 18 think the nurses generally said that they
- 19 wouldn't have been that familiar, certainly, with
- 20 midazolam at the very least and the
- 21 administration of that. If we could bring up the
- 22 timeline of 310-001-001, please. If we can
- 23 highlight the time, in and around 3.00 pm please,
- 24 and just drag it up, please. Thank you. So we
- 25 can see there at around 3.00 pm there's been the

- 1 ward round, she's been differentially diagnosed
- 2 with non-fitting status epilepticus, and then an
- 3 additional diagnoses at some point of
- 4 encephalitis and encephalopathy. She's been
- 5 administered diazepam, phenytoin and then
- 6 midazolam at around 3.25 pm, and there's a
- 7 seizure at around 3.25 pm and she's been examined
- 8 by the consultant paediatric neurologist. Are
- 9 you saying that that's the key time, as far as
- 10 you're concerned, when it reached that criteria
- 11 for PICU admission?
- 12 A. Yes. Because my understanding is that there
- 13 wasn't anything that said, "Well, this is a point
- 14 in time but now it's going to get better", so it
- 15 wasn't a momentary or a short expected phase. It
- 16 was something where there wasn't an end in sight
- 17 at that particular time.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: But that's around the time you think
- 19 that she should have been moved to intensive care
- 20 but that is, in terms of the nurses, their input
- 21 into that is limited, isn't it?
- 22 A. Well ...
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: I mean, they can raise flags or express
- 24 concerns but they cannot move Claire into
- 25 intensive care?

- 1 A. They can't physically remove her but they can
- 2 certainly express concerns about her being on
- 3 their ward. And there are means of escalating
- 4 that if you're particularly unhappy.
- 5 MR REID: To build on that, if we can bring up Staff
- 6 Nurse Field's transcript of 29th October 2012 at
- 7 page 93. She's asked at the bottom:
- 8 "Did you consider one-to-one nursing at any
- 9 stage?"
- 10 She says:
- "I don't believe that I did, but that's not
- 12 something that I would have requested or had any
- 13 control over. That would have been something
- 14 that the medical staff would have asked for in
- 15 terms of closer observation for the child. That
- 16 would have been facilitated, if you like, by the
- 17 nurse in charge."
- 18 Have you seen that as a recurring theme
- 19 throughout the nurses' witness statements, the
- 20 fact that a doctor's intervention might have been
- 21 required for an escalation in nursing care?
- 22 A. Yes.
- 23 Q. You're aware of that?
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 Q. If we just concentrate on the intensive care and

- 1 one-to-one nursing at the moment. What do you
- 2 think of the nurses general opinion that they
- 3 would have expected something like that -- indeed
- 4 required something like that -- to have been
- 5 directed by medical staff?
- 6 A. I have to say it is not my experience that that
- 7 is something that would be solely dependent on a
- 8 doctor to order. I think the amount of time that
- 9 we need to spend with a patient and how you
- 10 facilitate the observations falls to a nurse to
- 11 decide. I think there are times when you have
- 12 that debate with medical colleagues, and perhaps
- 13 there are times when somebody might express the
- 14 fact that they think it's not necessary, but I
- 15 would have said that that was a nursing judgment.
- 16 Q. In terms of that, is it a judgment of whether you
- 17 as the nurse speak directly to the doctor or is
- 18 the judgment that you decide, "Well, maybe I
- 19 should bring this to the nurse in charge of the
- 20 ward or the ward sister"?
- 21 A. Well, I think you would have to talk to the ward
- 22 sister, because it's about the allocation of
- 23 resources and the person in charge would have a
- 24 comment to make with regards to that.
- 25 Q. So is the ward sister the first port of call if

- 1 you think that your patient requires greater
- 2 resources, greater nursing care, is the ward
- 3 sister the first port of call for you as a nurse?
- 4 A. Yes, but it would also be the other way. If a
- 5 ward sister has got a child that is sick on their
- 6 ward, then they would be having a close look at
- 7 what was needed.
- 8 Q. I think Angela Pollock said in her evidence last
- 9 week that she would have wanted to have been
- 10 informed of any drops in Glasgow Coma Scale, any
- 11 changes in medication and so on, and in Claire's
- 12 case I think she says, if you bring up page
- 13 187 ...
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: From the same day?
- 15 MR REID: Sorry, from 30th October 2012. I asked her:
- 16 "Have you ever been in a situation where a
- 17 nurse informs you of what's happening with a
- 18 patient and you decided you need to step in as
- 19 the senior nurse and take over the management of
- 20 that patient?"
- 21 And she said, "Yes, I have". She was asked
- 22 about 5.00 pm, when her GCS was 6, whether she
- 23 would have taken control of nursing at that
- 24 point, and she said, "It's quite likely I would
- 25 have done so". In those circumstances, what

- 1 would you expect of the ward sister?
- 2 A. Well, to be discussing with the nurse at the
- 3 bedside what her observations were and what had
- 4 been going on, so a bit of history about the
- 5 patient. Having some understanding of what the
- 6 plan of care, both medically and nursing, was
- 7 aiming to do. And making their own judgments of
- 8 what was going on, assuming that a ward sister
- 9 has got a lot more experience to bring to the
- 10 situation perhaps than the nurse at the bedside
- 11 and then consulting with whatever medical staff
- 12 there were. And also -- sorry, if I could also
- 13 add, and looking for any lack of understanding on
- 14 the part of the nurse with regards to the
- 15 parameters within which she was working, or what
- 16 she needed to observe or things that she needed
- 17 to do.
- 18 Q. So I think you said that the normal system would
- 19 have been that you, as a staff nurse, would have
- 20 contacted your ward sister and brought the
- 21 patient to their attention, and if they thought
- 22 it warranted it, then the ward sister would speak
- 23 to the doctor, is that correct?
- 24 A. Probably. I say probably because if there was a
- 25 doctor in the vicinity then the nurse could have

- 1 a dialogue with him, and some of it depends on
- 2 what the physical presence of the ward sister is
- 3 at that particular time.
- 4 I would have thought that if there was
- 5 somebody -- a ward sister -- in charge of that
- 6 ward at the time that they would have been, or
- 7 should have been, aware of who the sick children
- 8 were in order to pay attention to those sick
- 9 children and to periodically check up on them; go
- 10 and ask what was going on.
- 11 Q. Well, as you know, the difficulty we have in the
- 12 case is that Ward Sister Pollock doesn't recall
- 13 whether she was present that day and there's no
- 14 evidence of who the ward sister might have been
- 15 on that particular day. So say, the ward sister
- 16 is unavailable to the staff nurses, for whatever
- 17 reason, what responsibilities do you think the
- 18 staff nurses have to contact the doctors and
- 19 discuss resources with them?
- 20 A. Well, things shouldn't just stop when the ward
- 21 sister isn't there, and so it would have fallen
- 22 to either the staff nurse at the bedside or the
- 23 person who was in charge of the ward to talk to
- 24 the doctors.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Am I right in putting this into the

- 1 overall context that, while you are to a degree
- 2 more critical than Ms Chapman was, you also refer
- 3 at least twice in your report to the fact, to put
- 4 it in terms, while there were some failures in
- 5 nursing care there were at least seven
- 6 opportunities for the doctors to act more
- 7 decisively than they did in Claire's interests?
- 8 A. Yes, I don't think that they were unaware of her
- 9 condition and I think some of the judgments about
- 10 what was going on, I think the nurses should,
- 11 from the observations, have known that she was
- 12 sick. But I don't think they were getting much
- 13 in the way of comment to indicate that from the
- 14 people who were doing the medical assessments.
- 15 MR REID: To go back to Sue Chapman's comment at 96-
- 16 24-191. We've already gone through paragraph 59
- 17 that it was the role of the medical staff to act
- 18 on these results, and she was reviewed on at
- 19 least seven occasions by members of the medical
- 20 team. If you turn to the timeline at 310-001-
- 21 001, we can see that there was a ward round with
- 22 a doctor; there's an examination by Dr Webb; the
- 23 re-examination is now in question but we know
- 24 that a doctor administered the phenytoin and the
- 25 midazolam. A doctor administered the sodium

- 1 valproate; Dr Webb attended and Dr Hughes
- 2 attended at 5.30 pm and at 9.30 pm, and then Dr
- 3 Stewart attended at 11.30 pm.
- 4 In those circumstances, do you think that the
- 5 nursing staff, knowing that the medical staff had
- 6 been on several occasions, could have come to the
- 7 conclusion that, "Well, the medical staff seemed
- 8 to think that the nursing care standard is fine
- 9 at present. Why should we do anything
- 10 different?"
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: It's not quite that.
- 12 MR REID: Sorry.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Surely the question is: could the
- 14 nurses have thought, "Because the doctors are
- 15 there so frequently that it's not the nursing
- 16 care of standard that's sufficient; it's that
- 17 Claire's condition is under control"?
- 18 A. I think they could have thought that. Yes,
- 19 definitely.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: And if the nurses get the message,
- 21 expressly or impliedly, from the doctors that,
- 22 "Although this girl is sick things are under
- 23 control" it becomes a bigger ask of the nurses to
- 24 become more proactive and to say to doctors, "Are
- 25 you sure she's being cared for properly? Are you

- 1 sure she's responding? Are you sure she's really
- 2 not very ill?"
- 3 A. Yes.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: There's a degree in it, isn't there? A
- 5 question of degree?
- 6 A. Yes, yes. And of course some of it is your past
- 7 experience helps you sometimes in situations like
- 8 that. So if you've seen something similar
- 9 before, or if you have a tendency to challenge
- 10 things, then maybe you would do that but I think
- 11 that in general, as you said -- and I think I
- 12 might have alluded to that in my report -- I
- 13 think they probably had a false sense of security
- 14 that all was okay even though, when you look back
- 15 on it, all was not okay.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, I mean, that's really drawing out
- 17 your point about the fact that the doctors were
- 18 coming and going so much.
- 19 A. Yes.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: The trouble is they were coming and
- 21 going so much but without effecting an
- 22 improvement in Claire's condition. I got the
- 23 impression, from what some of the nurses said,
- 24 that they might be a bit less deferential or
- 25 reserved now in 2012 than they would have been in

- 1 1996, and they said -- I think this is also
- 2 mentioned in your report -- that the system is
- 3 less hierarchical now. Is that accurate?
- 4 A. Yes. I think there's been a movement on both
- 5 fronts. I think doctors are more team players
- 6 these days along with the nurses, and nurses are
- 7 a bit more confident in challenging things.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: That's not much consolation that Mr and
- 9 Mrs Robert can take out of anything that's been
- 10 heard here over the last few weeks, but if there
- 11 was any consolation would it be that what
- 12 happened in Claire's case would be less likely to
- 13 happen now, at least from the nursing end,
- 14 because the nurses would be more likely to
- 15 express their concerns, if they had those
- 16 concerns?
- 17 A. I think so. But also I think possibly people
- 18 might be more willing to listen.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: We know from this case, and we know
- 20 also from Alan Strain's case that you also
- 21 reported that, to the extent that there was any
- 22 review or investigation afterwards, it entirely
- 23 excluded the nurses.
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Is that likely to happen these days?

- 1 A. I think it's highly unlikely.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 3 MR REID: While we're still on the paediatric
- 4 intensive care point, Mrs Ramsay, would you say
- 5 that the resources available in PICU were the
- 6 same in 1996 as now or were less than now?
- 7 A. Less.
- 8 Q. Would you accept that it was more difficult to
- 9 get a PICU bed in October 1996 than it would be
- 10 now?
- 11 A. Not necessarily, but for different reasons. I
- 12 think in 1996 it wasn't a highly -- well, the
- 13 reports hadn't come out and been implemented. It
- 14 wasn't a highly recognised speciality and so I
- 15 think people struggled for resources in there. I
- 16 think probably now people recognise the value of
- 17 PICU and so there's a greater demand perhaps,
- 18 although there might be more resources in the
- 19 speciality. So I think it was under pressure
- 20 then and it's probably under pressure now but for
- 21 slightly different reasons.
- 22 Q. So both the supply and the demand have increased?
- 23 A. Yes.
- Q. Several of the clinicians have said that, in
- 25 October 1996, one of the criteria for PICU

- 1 admission would have been artificial ventilation
- 2 and that, generally, it would be much more
- 3 difficult for a child who wasn't being
- 4 artificially ventilated to meet the criteria for
- 5 paediatric intensive care. What would you say
- 6 about that?
- 7 A. I think that's possibly a valid argument, and the
- 8 high dependency areas weren't particularly well
- 9 developed so it was either general ward or PICU.
- 10 But I would have thought there needed to be some
- 11 consideration of whether a child might be on the
- 12 verge of needing ventilation and, although it
- 13 isn't within my area of expertise to say at what
- 14 point she might have done with a Glasgow Coma
- 15 Score of 6, I think it remained a possibility
- 16 that she might be on the edge, particularly with
- 17 having midazolam of needing ventilation. So I
- 18 think do you do it proactively and put somebody
- in an environment where everything's there if
- 20 that is needed, or do you wait until the child
- 21 collapses and then rush them into a PICU?
- 22 Q. We will return to midazolam because, as we'll
- 23 hear from Dr Aronson later, midazolam can reduce
- 24 the respiratory function, isn't that correct?
- 25 A. Yes, that's my understanding.

- 1 Q. So are you saying that, in the absence of
- 2 artificial ventilation, it would have been more
- 3 difficult to get someone admitted to PICU in
- 4 October 1996 but it would not have been
- 5 impossible?
- 6 A. I think it would have been possible, but it
- 7 required a discussion because it needed people to
- 8 prioritise the use of their resources at the
- 9 time. But also to then determine whether the
- 10 environment that the child was -- if they
- 11 couldn't go into PICU you then have to make a
- 12 judgment on whether the environment they're in is
- 13 being made as safe as it possibly can be.
- 14 Q. If I can change tack and ask you about
- 15 hyponatraemia in 1996. What, as far as you can
- 16 recall, would have been your awareness of
- 17 hyponatraemia and any dangers related to it in
- 18 October 1996?
- 19 A. Well, I suppose my difficulty is that I was
- 20 originally a sister in a PICU where we saw a fair
- 21 number of children with low sodiums, and I was
- 22 also personally aware of inappropriate ADH so I
- 23 had knowledge. But I think on a general ward,
- 24 and I know from -- I went back to some clinical
- 25 practice as a staff nurse in 2003, I don't think

- 1 general nurses on a general ward would have known
- 2 anything about it.
- 3 Q. Even in 2003, prior to the National Patients
- 4 Safety Alert, staff nurses on the ward would
- 5 still be generally not that aware of ...
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 Q. Would they not be generally aware of
- 8 hyponatraemia itself or just the dangers related
- 9 to it?
- 10 A. Well, I suppose, most nurses would know what
- 11 hyponatraemia was but I don't think they would
- 12 have known what might cause it. They would know
- 13 because blood results come back and a child's got
- 14 a low sodium and somebody initiates some
- 15 treatment to correct that, and I don't think that
- 16 they would have known perhaps much more than
- 17 that.
- 18 Q. Would they have known to bring it to a doctor's
- 19 attention quickly, for example?
- 20 A. Well, if they were taking blood results over the
- 21 telephone then they would then inform the doctor
- 22 of those blood results. Whether they would make
- 23 a judgment that this sodium is low, I think is
- 24 possibly unlikely.
- 25 Q. Just on that subject, in terms of blood testing,

- 1 you might have seen from the transcripts I asked
- 2 several of the nurses whether they would ever
- 3 take the initiative and say to a doctor, "Do you
- 4 think we should have any blood tests?" for
- 5 example at the ward round. I think the
- 6 overwhelming majority said, "No, we wouldn't have
- 7 done that. It would have been a doctor's
- 8 decision to take the blood samples". Does that
- 9 reflect your knowledge of what was happening in
- 10 October 1996?
- 11 A. Yes, yes.
- 12 Q. So for example, at the ward round they had looked
- 13 at Claire and diagnosed some treatment but blood
- 14 samples hadn't been mentioned. You wouldn't have
- 15 thought it incumbent on the nurses to say, "Would
- 16 you like a new blood count, doctor?" or something
- 17 of that nature?
- 18 A. No, I don't think so. I think where the nurse
- 19 would possibly have prompted is where it was a
- 20 situation with a well-recognised, known protocol
- 21 for "this happens, that happens and that happens"
- 22 and they think that the houseman has forgotten.
- 23 So it's the "we usually do so-and-so". But I
- 24 think in a situation like this, which is a one-
- 25 off-type situation and not a standard problem

- 1 with a child then they wouldn't.
- 2 Q. So for example, if there was a ward round
- 3 protocol that said, "Make sure you check fluids,
- 4 bloods, electrolytes and things like that" the
- 5 nurse would have been making sure that those were
- 6 checked off?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 Q. And if something hadn't been done they would ask
- 9 about that?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 Q. In the absence of that you wouldn't expect them
- 12 to?
- 13 A. No.
- 14 Q. If I can ask you then about the nursing care
- 15 plan; if we bring up 090-043-145 and 146 please.
- 16 Those are two pages of Staff Nurse McRandal's
- 17 initial nursing care plan on Claire's admission
- 18 to Allen Ward. You're familiar with those
- 19 sheets?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. First of all, can I ask you what in nursing is
- 22 the purpose of a nursing care plan?
- 23 A. Well, it has several dimensions to it. One of
- 24 them is guide the care that's going to be
- 25 delivered so it's a plan of what somebody's going

- 1 to do. Secondly, it's a way of seeing whether
- 2 things have been successful, but it's also a
- 3 communication tool so that anybody coming along
- 4 can see what care that that child is having and
- 5 then, retrospectively, you can see what care the
- 6 child received.
- 7 Q. In that way does it share many of the same
- 8 characteristics as the nursing notes themselves
- 9 or the clinical notes?
- 10 A. Well, the nursing notes would be part of the care
- 11 plan, because there's the bits that you see in
- 12 front of you that identify the problems and the
- 13 goals and then the written part is the evaluation
- 14 that's telling you whether these things worked,
- 15 tell you any variations in the child throughout
- 16 the course of that shift, and documents any
- 17 relevant events. So the evaluation is part of
- 18 that whole, what we call, nursing process,
- 19 assessment, planning, implementation and
- 20 evaluation.
- 21 Q. So it's almost inaccurate for us to separate the
- 22 nursing notes from the nursing care plan because,
- 23 effectively, they're one and the same?
- 24 A. They're all part of the same thing.
- 25 Q. You said that it's a communication tool to let

- 1 others know the care that the patient is
- 2 receiving. In general, is that referring to the
- 3 nurses who are coming on after that nurse, or
- 4 does it also refer to the nurses that are on at
- 5 the same time?
- 6 A. It's both, because a nurse could be going past
- 7 the bedside and notice something, or called upon
- 8 to do something, and so you need to have a quick
- 9 look at the care plan to see who the child is,
- 10 what's going on, and so it acts as an indicators
- 11 of that child's situation. And then it's for the
- 12 next people coming on the next shift because you
- 13 can't possibly hand over all the information
- 14 verbally. And people's ability to retain
- 15 information is sometimes limited, and so they
- 16 need something to go back to, to see what is
- 17 happening or what they should've been doing, and
- 18 the more junior you are then perhaps you need the
- 19 guidance of the care plan.
- 20 Q. How often would you review the care plan?
- 21 A. Well, people would say that you should try to do
- 22 it on a continuous basis, but sometimes that is
- 23 logistically quite difficult for people, because
- 24 they get caught up in the here and now. So I
- 25 think the practice has been, just before the end

- 1 of the shift, for people to write up their
- 2 evaluation and change the care plan, with people
- 3 often staying afterwards in order to complete the
- 4 paperwork.
- 5 Q. I was asking Staff Nurse McCann about that, and
- 6 we were looking at the priorities of things to be
- 7 done. And obviously there are the actions that a
- 8 nurse needs to do right at that time:
- 9 medications, bloods and so on. Does a nursing
- 10 care plan fall a little down that list, in terms
- 11 of the priorities that a nurse has?
- 12 A. I think on a day-to-day basis this has been a
- 13 longstanding problem with care planning, that
- 14 people do find it a chore sometimes, and perhaps
- 15 with nurses whose training didn't train them to
- 16 think in this way. So perhaps people, like
- 17 myself, where we did it differently. Years ago
- 18 it used to be that you just wrote a narrative of
- 19 what had happened during the day. You didn't
- 20 have to do all this planning. I think that
- 21 nurses who've trained since the 1990s would find
- 22 this easier to do, because that's the way they've
- 23 been taught to deliver nursing care, so ...
- Q. I think that Staff Nurse McCann said -- as you
- 25 did -- that normally she would wait until things

- 1 quietened down, maybe over the shift, and that
- 2 was the opportunity they might have taken to
- 3 update the care plans then.
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 Q. She said that was why she didn't get round to
- 6 reviewing the care plan on the evening of the
- 7 22nd and the 23rd October.
- 8 A. Yes, because while you're delivering care, you
- 9 don't really need to read what you're delivering,
- 10 because you've got it in your head and you know
- 11 what you're doing, so I would say that the
- 12 majority of people at the time were doing it in
- 13 the way that she described.
- 14 Q. Although, as you said earlier, that then leaves
- 15 the problem of those on the shift at the same
- 16 time as you don't have the opportunity to see
- 17 that updated care plan?
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 Q. Is that a problem that's encountered then?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Is this an equivalent of the police
- 22 complaining they have to spend too much time
- 23 doing documents and not enough time out in the
- 24 streets?
- 25 A. I think so. There has been a lot of controversy

- 1 about nursing care planning, and in the main it
- 2 hasn't been done very well over the years.
- 3 MR REID: Well, let me ask you this, do you think the
- 4 importance of the care plan outweighs the effort
- 5 that's needed to draw it up and update it, or do
- 6 you think it is an unnecessary use of time during
- 7 a nurse's shift?
- 8 A. My view -- and I think the view of the regulator
- 9 as well -- is that care planning and evaluation
- 10 is an indicator of good nursing care. Now, I
- 11 think one of the difficulties is that the amount
- 12 of time that it takes to do it effectively has
- 13 not been taken account of, in working out how
- 14 many people you need to look after a group of
- 15 patients, so it then became an add-on as opposed
- 16 to an integral part of delivering care.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Is that any closer to resolution or is
- 18 that an ongoing problem?
- 19 A. I think it is likely to be an ongoing problem. I
- 20 think also maybe the tools that people have for
- 21 care planning aren't meeting their needs. I
- 22 think there has been some development in terms of
- 23 computerised care planning, but I have some
- 24 personal criticisms of that. But I think people
- 25 are working on it.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 2 MR REID: Well, let's just look at the actual care
- 3 plans then in Claire's case. First of all, Staff
- 4 Nurse McRandal said in her evidence the care plan
- 5 would normally be completed within 12 hours of
- 6 admission. Would that reflect what you think the
- 7 position was in October 1996?
- 8 A. Well, the guidance said that it should be done
- 9 within 24 hours, so 12 hours is good going by
- 10 that standard.
- 11 Q. If we can bring up your report at 231-002-019,
- 12 please? If we go to the third paragraph there,
- 13 your general opinion is that:
- 14 "The care plans reflect the identified
- 15 problems associated with the diagnosis of
- 16 seizures and vomiting, and the nursing actions
- 17 listed were comprehensive and were prepared in a
- 18 timely manner."
- 19 And I presume that's still your position?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. However, you add that you believe that more
- 22 frequent observation of some vital signs should
- 23 have been made, and you elaborate on that at page
- 24 3 of your report. If we just bring that up 231-
- 25 002-003. (Pause) It might be the wrong

- 1 reference. But I think you said that overnight
- 2 the temperature, pulse and respirations were
- 3 recorded four hourly, and initially these
- 4 observations were slightly elevated but, by 6.00
- 5 am, they were in normal limits, and you consider
- 6 that hourly recordings were indicated. Can you
- 7 just explain why you think that hourly recordings
- 8 were indicated?
- 9 A. Well, it's my understanding that they thought
- 10 that Claire had had a seizure and, okay, at night
- 11 time you would expect a child to be asleep, but
- 12 my understanding is that she wasn't communicating
- 13 normally. Four hourly observations just didn't
- 14 seem very frequent for a child who's had one fit,
- 15 supposedly, who possibly could have had another
- 16 fit, and so four hourly didn't seem to me very
- 17 often to be going and checking things.
- 18 Q. If we bring up Staff Nurse McRandal's note at
- 19 090-041-040. (Pause) See there she says:
- 20 "Nine-year-old girl. History of mental
- 21 handicap and severe learning difficulties,
- 22 admitted via casualty with a history of vomiting
- 23 this afternoon, slurred speech, drowsiness,
- 24 pallor and query seizure."
- 25 Is that what you're referring to?

- 1 A. Yes.
- 2 Q. And you think in those circumstances, because of
- 3 the possibility of the seizure, there should have
- 4 been more frequent observations?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 Q. Staff Nurse McRandal has replied to that to say
- 7 that, having vital sign observations on a more
- 8 frequent basis, again, would only have been done
- 9 if directed by medical staff. How would you
- 10 respond to that?
- 11 A. Well, I must say that it is not my experience to
- 12 have ever had vital signs directed by medical
- 13 staff.
- 14 Q. And why do you think that has been your
- 15 experience?
- 16 A. Because I felt that as a nurse I was best placed
- 17 to make judgments on how frequently I needed to
- 18 look at somebody and, in particular, my level of
- 19 expertise was probably far greater than the
- 20 houseman, and so I felt myself better able to
- 21 make the decision.
- 22 Q. Because you would be the one doing the
- 23 observations?
- 24 A. Yes.
- Q. And that you'd be the one there with the patient

- 1 more often?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 Q. And you had more experience than the house
- 4 officer?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 Q. You feel you can make a better judgment call?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 Q. I think you've said that some of those vital
- 9 signs were a little slightly elevated, but by
- 10 6.00 am they were within normal limits. Is that,
- 11 to some extent, you saying that that should've
- 12 been done but it's really of little consequence?
- 13 A. Yes, I think it should've been done but it
- 14 doesn't appear to have made, to me, any
- 15 difference, the fact that they weren't done
- 16 because by 6 o'clock it seems that things were
- 17 reasonably okay.
- 18 Q. In general, in terms of Claire's vital signs,
- 19 removing the central nervous system observations
- 20 for the moment, in general her vital signs did
- 21 seem to be stable throughout her admission until
- 22 her arrest at 2.30 on 23rd October. Is that a
- 23 fair summary of her vital sign recordings?
- 24 A. Yes, I think so. They weren't anything that was
- 25 so glaring that you'd shout.

- 1 Q. (Pause) We've already touched upon it, but it
- 2 seems to be a recurring theme that different
- 3 elements of the nursing care were felt to require
- 4 medical direction. Do you have any comment, in
- 5 general, just about that? You've said some
- 6 things already. Do you have any comment, in
- 7 general, about the fact that the nurses seemed to
- 8 require so much medical direction for a variety
- 9 of different elements?
- 10 A. Well, it sounds to me as though that was the way
- 11 that things worked at the time, and I can't be
- 12 sure as to why that would be but possibly custom
- 13 and practice. That's how it's always been, that
- 14 this is what you asked the doctor or the doctor
- 15 had the last say.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: Speaking on a general level then,
- 17 you've heard that things have changed
- 18 significantly since then, and the local nurses
- 19 have said that in their evidence here over the
- 20 last week or two. But do I take it from your
- 21 last answer that you're expressing a little bit
- 22 of surprise that they were quite as dependent on
- 23 direction from doctors in 1996, as perhaps comes
- 24 over in the transcript?
- 25 A. Yes, I am, because nursing is always evolving,

- 1 and this was a children's hospital that
- 2 professionally has a good reputation, and the
- 3 nurses there were professionally -- in particular
- 4 the senior nurses, that I know from the past,
- 5 were very engaged in wider nursing circles, and
- 6 so I'm a little bit surprised, I suppose, that at
- 7 ward level people come across as being a bit more
- 8 dictated to by the doctors, or dependent on the
- 9 doctor's decision.
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 11 MR REID: If I can then bring up the fluid balance
- 12 chart at 090-038-133, please. (Pause) First of
- 13 all, I think you've said in your report that you
- 14 think that the fluid balance charts appear to
- 15 generally show an accurate recording of fluid
- 16 intake, would that be correct?
- 17 A. Yes.
- 18 Q. Just while we're on the intake section, is there
- 19 anything you would note about anything to do with
- 20 the intake of fluids on those charts?
- 21 A. Well, apart from the fact that it's just a
- 22 continuous total, so that you haven't got written
- 23 down readily to see what the hourly volume was.
- 24 You've got to calculate it. But it does seems as
- 25 though that when the recordings were done they

- 1 weren't done on the actual hour, so it isn't a
- 2 consistent 64 ml each hour that is being
- 3 recorded. The volumes vary.
- 4 Q. If we bring up 135 as well, please.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: That is inevitable, Mrs Ramsay, that
- 6 you don't?
- 7 A. Yes, it is, but some of these -- well, I think I
- 8 did a little bit of sort of working it out --
- 9 seem to show quite a bit of variation.
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 11 A. But, yes, there is an inevitability because you
- 12 can't get to every patient on the hour.
- 13 MR REID: Two things on that. First of all, although
- 14 you say it is an accurate recording of fluid
- 15 intake, all you see is a cumulative total of the
- 16 fluids, is that what you mean?
- 17 A. Yes.
- 18 Q. And you would have liked to have seen the
- 19 individual fluid per hour?
- 20 A. Well, the common practice that I have experienced
- 21 is that you would put what the level started at,
- 22 and then what the level finished at after the
- 23 hour, and then what the difference was and then
- 24 have a cumulative total.
- 25 Q. Yes. So for example, if we bring up the PQ fluid

- 1 balance chart at 090-058-208. If you zoom into
- 2 the top left-hand corner of that, please. Thank
- 3 you. Is that what you mean, the fact that
- 4 there's a number that was ticking down and a
- 5 number ticking up?
- 6 A. Yes. And you wouldn't necessarily have separate
- 7 columns. You put one figure over the top of the
- 8 other.
- 9 Q. And the second point you were saying there was
- 10 that there obviously seemed to be some
- 11 discrepancy between the times of each hour.
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 Q. The Chairman made the point, obviously, that if
- 14 you have several children receiving IV fluids and
- 15 it comes up to the hour, you can't check the
- 16 fluid balance of each and every one of those at
- 17 that time.
- 18 A. No.
- 19 Q. But what variance of time would you consider
- 20 reasonable?
- 21 A. Well, some of that depends on how many other
- 22 children you've got to look after and whether or
- 23 not they've got IVs, but probably sort of
- 24 five/ten minutes each side of the hour.
- 25 Q. Yes. If we then look at the output, and we will

- 1 leave this 135 up there, we can see urine is
- 2 noted as "PU", as in episode of urine. And
- 3 during Claire's care more than only once is an
- 4 indication of volume written as "large" at 11.05.
- 5 What would you say about the measurement of urine
- 6 on those fluid balance charts, as regards October
- 7 1996?
- 8 A. The way that it's described would have been
- 9 common practice at the time. The use of "large"
- 10 to indicate what the volume is would've been
- 11 common, or to use plus signs to indicate volume.
- 12 So I would say that this is probably the way that
- 13 urine output was indicated for the majority of
- 14 children.
- 15 Q. Would you consider that to be an accurate
- 16 measurement of urine?
- 17 A. No.
- 18 Q. And why is that?
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: It doesn't tell you.
- 20 A. It doesn't tell you and it's guesswork, and it's
- 21 subjective.
- 22 MR REID: Yes. Let's look at now. Would you consider
- 23 that now to be acceptable customary practice?
- 24 A. I think probably some of it depends on what's
- 25 wrong with the child, but a child with an

- 1 intravenous infusion people have said for a very,
- 2 very long time accurate measurements. I think
- 3 what's happened is that people's definition of
- 4 "accurate" has got a little bit distorted over
- 5 the years, so I think a child for an intravenous
- 6 infusion then this chance recording is not
- 7 acceptable now.
- 8 Q. So you wouldn't expect it with every single
- 9 child, but a child who's receiving intravenous
- 10 fluids you would expect a measurement of urine?
- 11 A. Yes.
- 12 Q. And that would be by weighing nappies or
- 13 collecting urine, I presume?
- 14 A. Yes.
- 15 Q. Or if they have a catheter, then checking that?
- 16 A. Yes.
- 17 Q. You may have seen the evidence of Staff Nurse
- 18 McRandal and Mrs Pollock regarding practice on
- 19 Allen Ward in the children's hospital at present,
- 20 which is that in not every case of a child who is
- 21 receiving IV fluids would their urine be measured
- 22 in that way, and they would still maybe record
- 23 that as "PU". How would you assess that as
- 24 reasonable practice or otherwise?
- 25 A. I would say I would be surprised, in the light of

- 1 these events, in the light of the publicity. And
- 2 my understanding is that there are guidance. But
- 3 I also understand that the guidance indicates
- 4 that there's a clinical judgment in this, and so
- 5 it isn't an absolute. It isn't that every child
- 6 on an IV must have its urine measured. But I
- 7 would say that I would be surprised.
- 8 Q. Well, certainly, let's say in the hospitals that
- 9 you're familiar with, in wards where children are
- 10 receiving IV fluids, would you expect, of the
- 11 staff nurses there, that they measure the urinary
- 12 output of children on IV fluids?
- 13 A. Now I would.
- 14 Q. If we bring up 090-003-133. (Pause) I just ask
- 15 you just as a general point, something I asked
- 16 Staff Nurse McRandal. Claire's on IV fluids, and
- 17 it seems to be that there is one episode of
- 18 urination between 10.30 and the next episode at
- 19 around 11.05 pm the next night. Would you
- 20 consider that to be a common occurrence, or an
- 21 uncommon occurrence?
- 22 A. So the timeframe is 10.30 pm at night until ...?
- 23 Q. If we bring up 135, please. See on the left-hand
- 24 side that the IV fluids were begun at 10.30 pm.
- 25 There was an episode of urination at around 3.00

- 1 am, and the next episode of urination is at
- 2 11.05. Is that common or uncommon?
- 3 A. Well, bearing in mind that -- and I wouldn't be
- 4 able to describe the physiology -- a lot of
- 5 people don't pass urine at night, and so that
- 6 seems to be reasonable.
- 7 Q. And another query on the left-hand side. It
- 8 seems that Claire was vomiting on several
- 9 occasions or six recorded episodes of vomiting
- 10 there overnight. She's described the next
- 11 morning as having slept well. If a child was
- 12 vomiting on a regular occurrence, would you
- 13 consider that to have been sleeping well
- 14 overnight?
- 15 A. Well, not really, because she was disturbed six
- 16 times in order to have a small vomit. But she
- 17 presumably wasn't very awake when this happened
- 18 and she wasn't sitting up and vomiting into a
- 19 bowl, so she was having small vomits, which were
- 20 possibly while she was half asleep.
- 21 Q. Would you expect anybody to be notified about the
- 22 fact that there were several episodes of vomiting
- 23 overnight?
- 24 A. Yes. And I've thought about this and I think
- 25 probably, at least on the ward round, that would

- 1 be one of the things that you would say that:
- 2 "She's been vomiting overnight".
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: This document, that we're looking at
- 4 now, that would be available on the ward round,
- 5 wouldn't it?
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: So it is something that should be
- 8 picked up?
- 9 A. Yes. They should all have been available at the
- 10 end of the bed for anybody to look at at any
- 11 time.
- 12 MR REID: (Pause) If I can move then to the ward
- 13 round the next morning. As you may have gathered
- 14 from the evidence, it is Staff Nurse Field that
- 15 says that Kate Linskey, who had been a full staff
- 16 nurse for only a short period of time, she
- 17 believes that she was the nurse on the ward
- 18 round. Staff Nurse Linskey can't recall whether
- 19 she was or not. In general, in your experience
- 20 of ward rounds in October 1996, what level of
- 21 nurse would normally be on the ward round?
- 22 A. The most senior person on duty.
- 23 Q. Would that be the ward sister if she was
- 24 available?
- 25 A. Yes, the ward sister or the person who was deemed

- 1 to be in charge.
- Q. In terms of Staff Nurse Linskey's experience, she
- 3 seemed to be one of the less experienced members
- 4 who were on the ward at the time. Do you have
- 5 any comment to make about her level of experience
- 6 and being the nurse on the ward round?
- 7 A. My understanding is that she wasn't registered as
- 8 a children's nurse, and so she might have had
- 9 experience, through having been in that
- 10 environment for a while, to be able to pick up
- 11 things, pass on information, but not necessarily
- 12 have the knowledge and expertise to contribute to
- 13 the discussion.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: I think she appears to have been the
- 15 longest qualified nurse, in the sense that she
- 16 was a state enrolled nurse from 1981. But she
- 17 wasn't the most experienced children's nurse?
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Again, is there a balance to be struck
- 20 there. Can you see why she went on the ward
- 21 round?
- 22 A. Well, yes, I can because when she was a
- 23 longstanding enrolled nurse, part of that team,
- she would have been valued by her colleagues
- 25 because of the expertise that she'd developed

- 1 through being there for a long time.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 3 MR REID: If we look at Staff Nurse Field's note of
- 4 the ward round. Bring up pages 090-040-140 and
- 5 141 together, please. (Pause) Thank you. It is
- 6 a little small, but you might be aware that the
- 7 diagnosis that was noted by Dr Stevenson of Dr
- 8 Sands' ward round was non-fitting status
- 9 epilepticus. Are you aware of that?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 Q. It seems at some point after that that Dr Sands
- 12 added the diagnosis in the note of encephalitis
- 13 and encephalopathy. Are you aware of that?
- 14 A. Yes.
- 15 Q. And there has been some debate about whether
- 16 encephalitis was actually mentioned on the ward
- 17 round, but Dr Sands certainly says it would have
- 18 been. Would you have expected the nurse, who is
- 19 making a note of the ward round, to have noted
- 20 either encephalitis or encephalopathy on the
- 21 nursing note?
- 22 A. I wouldn't have expected that person to have put
- 23 it into the care plan, because the person on the
- 24 ward round was not the person who ultimately had
- 25 the responsibility for writing the case plan.

- 1 But to pass on what the current thinking was,
- 2 then I think that would have been a reasonable
- 3 thing for her to have done
- 4 Q. As in to pass it on to the nurses caring for
- 5 Claire. And that nurse who is caring for Claire,
- 6 would you expect them to write that in the notes?
- 7 A. Yes, and if I could just add that I'm a little
- 8 bit surprised that the nurse caring for Claire
- 9 wasn't there when the doctors were looking at
- 10 her, because she was the one with the most
- 11 knowledge.
- 12 Q. On a general ward round there's a nurse, as you
- 13 say, a more senior nurse, accompanying the doctor
- 14 on the ward round. Would you generally expect
- 15 the nurse who is taking care of the patient to
- 16 then be present whenever her patients are being
- 17 seen?
- 18 A. Yes, but I think there's probably ... this has a
- 19 1996 element to it and so these days I think it
- 20 would be more common, perhaps, than it was then.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: So would that be in addition to the
- 22 sister?
- 23 A. Yes, because I think the sister's role would be
- 24 to oversee the lots, co-ordinate, but the
- 25 individual nurse would have the in-depth

- 1 knowledge of the child because she'd been looking
- 2 after them, and would nowadays be expected to
- 3 contributed but probably less so in 1996.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 5 MR REID: Now, you have said previously you would have
- 6 expected the care plan to be reviewed probably at
- 7 the end of each shift.
- 8 A. Yes.
- 9 Q. I think you have also said in your report
- 10 previously that you would expect it to be
- 11 reviewed if there was a change in diagnosis or a
- 12 change in condition. Is that right?
- 13 A. Yes.
- 14 Q. At the ward round then the diagnosis changes from
- 15 that of a viral illness to that of non-fitting
- 16 status epilepticus, with possible encephalitis
- 17 and encephalopathy. Would you expect then, on
- 18 the basis of that, that the care plan should be
- 19 reviewed?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. If it had been reviewed at that stage, how would
- 22 you have expected it to have been changed?
- 23 A. The key nursing element was that Claire had
- 24 altered consciousness, and so that needed to be a
- 25 feature because, regardless of what her medical

- 1 diagnosis was, her nursing care needed to focus
- 2 on the fact that she had altered consciousness,
- 3 and what the possibilities were for that in terms
- 4 of: what would you look for if it was getting
- 5 worse? What would the indicators be? What
- 6 things should you be noting? So I think it was
- 7 the altered consciousness and what the potentials
- 8 are for a child with altered consciousness,
- 9 because you would also be looking at their
- 10 breathing, were they fading into unconsciousness
- 11 to the point whereby their breathing is affected.
- 12 And a child who is unconscious might not be able
- 13 to maintain their own airway, so you then have to
- 14 look at the way they're positioned in their bed
- 15 in order to make sure that their airway is clear.
- 16 So I think the altered consciousness is the
- 17 overriding nursing need.
- 18 Q. I think, indeed, in your report at page 21 --
- 19 that is 231-002-021, and 020 as well, bring that
- 20 up, please -- there you list a number of the
- 21 different problems and goals that you would've
- 22 liked to have seen changed in Claire's care plan.
- 23 First of all, what effect do you think not
- 24 changing the care plan, along those lines, may
- 25 have had?

- 1 A. Maybe it didn't emphasise the fact that she was
- 2 unconscious, because she could've looked as
- 3 though she was just asleep and justifying the
- 4 level of consciousness by the medicines that she
- 5 was having, or the fact that she was thought to
- 6 have had a fit and was, you know, post having had
- 7 the fit. So it didn't emphasise that this was a
- 8 child with altered consciousness and so it then
- 9 brought in all the other possible consequences,
- 10 or risks associated with your consciousness level
- 11 being reduced.
- 12 Q. Would it almost be fair to say that the fact the
- 13 unconsciousness wasn't noted in the care plan,
- 14 does that mean also then the seriousness might
- 15 not also be considered?
- 16 A. Yes, I think that's possible.
- 17 Q. One of the elements you say there in the final
- 18 section is:
- 19 "Possible aspiration due to reduced
- 20 consciousness. The nursing goal: prevent
- 21 aspiration, and the nursing intervention: pass
- 22 naso-gastric tube."
- 23 Staff Nurse Field in her evidence said that,
- 24 again, this would be another element where they
- 25 would not pass a naso-gastric tube unless the

- 1 medical staff had requested it. Would you have
- 2 any comment to make about that?
- 3 A. Yes, a naso-gastric tube needs to be sanctioned
- 4 by a doctor. It isn't something that nurses
- 5 would readily do unless it was part of some
- 6 protocol: you know, "Child admitted with X always
- 7 has a naso-gastric tube". But I think that,
- 8 bearing in mind that she had been vomiting, her
- 9 consciousness level was reduced, so she might not
- 10 have been able to forcibly vomit and so there was
- 11 the potential for her to aspirate. There needed
- 12 to be the discussion. Now, at the end of that
- 13 discussion, somebody might have decided that
- 14 passing a naso-gastric tube could have
- 15 compromised her airway, and so it was best not to
- 16 do it at that point. So the doctor would have
- 17 had the final decision, but I don't think anybody
- 18 had the discussion.
- 19 Q. Yes. So it's not that perhaps a naso-gastric
- 20 should definitely have been passed, it's that the
- 21 nurse should have discussed it with the doctor
- 22 and it should have been considered?
- 23 A. Yes.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: And this is exactly where you're
- 25 getting into the absence of the sister, the ward

- 1 round being done in conjunction with the nurse
- 2 who is there and not the nurse who does the care.
- 3 We're getting more removed from pinning down what
- 4 exactly should be done with Claire?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 7 MR REID: You said that you think the care plan should
- 8 have been reviewed and amended at this stage
- 9 because of Claire's change in diagnosis and the
- 10 fact that she generally was unconscious, and
- 11 Staff Nurse Field, I think to be fair, has
- 12 accepted that she believes that she should've
- 13 maybe reviewed the care plan on the basis of the
- 14 change of condition. Unfortunately, of course,
- 15 we don't have any evidence from Staff Nurse
- 16 Ellison, and Staff Nurse McCann says that simply
- 17 it did not reach that stage where she had the
- 18 time to perhaps review the care plan. By that
- 19 time Claire had gone off to intensive care.
- 20 In terms of any other changes, changes of the
- 21 day of the care plan, if we bring up 310-001-001,
- 22 please. (Pause) Just by itself thank you. We
- 23 talked about at the ward round how the care plan
- 24 might have been changed after that. At what
- 25 other stages during the day do you think that the

- 1 care plan maybe should've been reviewed or
- 2 changed?
- 3 A. Possibly when she'd had that seizure, because
- 4 that then became something definite, whereas
- 5 before there was the possibility, so she had
- 6 actually had an actual seizure; when the various
- 7 medicines started, like the midazolam, when that
- 8 infusion started, because that brings with it
- 9 possible complications. So when the midazolam
- 10 started. I think they're the ones I can think of
- 11 at the moment.
- 12 Q. And then, as you say, at the change of shifts as
- 13 well.
- 14 A. Yes.
- 15 Q. I will go further into the areas of the seizures
- 16 and the medication after the break. One last
- 17 point just before we break.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: We don't need a break.
- 19 MR REID: Oh we don't need a break at this point.
- 20 A. Can I have a glass of water?
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Unless you particularly want one, Mrs
- 22 Ramsay.
- 23 A. No. I'm fine.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: We have been breaking for the
- 25 stenographer, but we don't need to.

- 1 MR REID: I will go to this point before I move on to
- 2 the medication. The neurological observations
- 3 were begun at 1 o'clock on 22nd October. I
- 4 presume you would have expected the care plan to
- 5 be amended to reflect that as well?
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 Q. If we bring that page up. It's 090-039-137,
- 8 please. (Pause) And if we just look at the
- 9 respiratory rate section, please. It's just at
- 10 the bottom, "Respiratory rates". (Pause) If you
- 11 note there, there seem to be a few lines and dots
- 12 but there are certain areas where the readings
- 13 are missing. Would you have any comment to make
- 14 about the fact that some of the respiratory
- 15 observations are missing on that part of the
- 16 chart?
- 17 A. One is that it's fairly comment for respiratory
- 18 observations not to be recorded, but respiratory
- 19 observations in a child who is unconscious are
- 20 particularly important. And so the fact that
- 21 there are long periods when no respiratory rate
- 22 was recorded is an omission in record keeping.
- 23 Q. If we just draw that up to the full form, please,
- 24 and zoom in on the GCS scores, please. (Pause)
- 25 Would you be quite familiar with taking central

- 1 nervous system observations for the purpose of
- 2 the Glasgow Coma Scale?
- 3 A. In the past, yes, not recently.
- 4 Q. First of all, in terms of the scores that were
- 5 taken on 22nd and 23rd October, how would you
- 6 consider the competence of how that was done in
- 7 that form?
- 8 A. Well, the questions are there and the ticks have
- 9 been put beside them, so ...
- 10 Q. So generally reasonable?
- 11 A. Yes.
- 12 Q. I presume that there would be different times
- 13 when you were taking a Glasgow Coma Scale result,
- 14 and you would be taking it maybe an hour after a
- 15 different nurse had taken a result. From your
- 16 experience, what did you find about the
- 17 differences between the subjective views of each
- 18 of the different nurses, when it came to
- 19 assessing someone for a GCS result?
- 20 A. I think some of it depends on the expertise of
- 21 the person that's doing it, and possibly you then
- 22 get more expertise of the individuals, then you
- 23 get greater consistency. But if your assessment
- 24 varies from the previous one, then you would
- 25 either re-check it to see which one of you is the

- 1 closest to it, or get somebody else to come and
- 2 check what you've observed, because there is some
- 3 subjectivity to these assessments, and some level
- 4 of expertise in terms of interpreting what you're
- 5 seeing in front of you.
- 6 Q. So you might double check it yourself; you might
- 7 bring another member of staff. Would the ideal
- 8 situation be to grab whoever it was who did the
- 9 previous reading and see if they thought there
- 10 had been a deterioration?
- 11 A. Yes, but also for some of these things you can
- 12 ask a parent's view as well, because the parents
- 13 are the constant, and so they might have been
- 14 there when the previous person did things, and so
- 15 asking, "How did Claire respond last time?" would
- 16 give you an indication of what the other person
- 17 was seeing when they recorded what they were
- 18 recording.
- 19 Q. Let me ask you about that. A child is on IV
- 20 fluids or is getting hourly observations. You
- 21 always have to come to that child once an hour.
- 22 Would it be regular any time you come to see a
- 23 child to check on anything that you as a nurse
- 24 would say to the parent, "Well, how is she at
- 25 this point?"

- 1 A. Yes.
- 2 Q. So you would be getting that feedback from them
- 3 on an hourly basis if you were doing hourly
- 4 observations?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 Q. And you said that if there's a difference in
- 7 score you would maybe go and check that with
- 8 someone?
- 9 A. Yes.
- 10 Q. Would that be any difference in score or just a
- 11 significant difference?
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: Scores as low as this surely?
- 13 A. Pardon?
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: When the scores are as low as this
- 15 you're going to be worried?
- 16 A. Yes.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: If the scores are higher and are not
- 18 causing concern?
- 19 A. Yes, if they're better then it's all to the good
- 20 and you probably wouldn't give it a second
- 21 thought. You'd think: "Oh this treatment is
- 22 working. Things are on the mend". But if the
- 23 scores were worse, then you would want to go and
- 24 check with somebody that you were reading it
- 25 correctly.

- 1 MR REID: (Pause) We can see there that there are
- 2 drops from 3.00 pm, from 9 to 7; 4.00 pm from 7
- 3 to 6; at 9.00 pm from 8 to 6, and then it stays
- 4 at 6 from then on. If you had seen a drop in the
- 5 GCS score, and you had maybe checked that with
- 6 someone else, but you were still satisfied that
- 7 there had been a drop, what would the next stage
- 8 be? Would you inform anyone, for example?
- 9 A. Well, assuming you'd had the discussion with
- 10 another staff member on the ward, then one of
- 11 those people should call the doctor to check that
- 12 that was okay, that they were happy that the
- 13 score was down to 6. Because if you don't do it
- 14 at 6, do you then do it at 5 or do you just wait
- 15 until things have got down the bottom?
- 16 Q. And let's say that you're the senior nurse and
- 17 you're told by someone else that the Glasgow Coma
- 18 Scale has dropped, firstly, do you go and see the
- 19 patient?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. And if you're also satisfied that there's been a
- 22 deterioration in the condition do you inform a
- 23 doctor?
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 Q. And would you then expect them to attend the

- 1 patient as soon as possible?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 Q. And would you expect any drop in the Glasgow Coma
- 4 Scale to be noted in the nursing notes?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 Q. And you've had an opportunity to see the nursing
- 7 notes. Would you say that each of those drops is
- 8 reflected in the nursing notes?
- 9 A. I can't remember offhand.
- 10 Q. Well, I'll bring them up for you then. If we can
- 11 go to 090-040-141, please. We can see there
- 12 Staff Nurse Ellison's note. She says:
- "Continuous on hourly CNS obs, GNS 6 to 7."
- 14 I think later on she says:
- 15 "Very unresponsive, only to pain, remains
- 16 pale."
- 17 And then if we go to the next page, which is
- 18 at 138. (Pause) There is no note of the GCS
- 19 other than on the right-hand side. Staff Nurse
- 20 Lorraine McCann at 11.00 pm notes Glasgow Coma
- 21 Scale of 6. So if we bring back up the CNS chart
- 22 at 090-039-137, please. (Pause) So we have that
- one note of Staff Nurse Ellison saying: "GCS 6/7"
- 24 and we have that one note of Lorraine McCann at
- 25 11.00 pm saying: "Glasgow Coma Scale 6". Would

- 1 you have expected the drops in the GCS to have
- 2 been further noted in the notes then, the notes
- 3 that were made?
- 4 A. I don't think I would've expected somebody to
- 5 have done the observations and immediately gone
- 6 and written it in the evaluation, because that
- 7 isn't how people tended to do things. They
- 8 tended to do a summary of things at the end of
- 9 the day. And, of course, the trouble with that
- 10 is it is a summary. It's not a blow by blow
- 11 account of what's gone on. But bearing in mind
- 12 there seemed to be references to other things,
- 13 like change in temperature, I think it's
- 14 surprising that there aren't other references to
- 15 the Glasgow Coma Score, considering being
- 16 unconscious was her main problem.
- 17 Q. Can I ask about that. If we look at the chart we
- 18 had before which also has her vital signs. If we
- 19 just zoom out of that. Several of the nurses and
- 20 doctors have described Claire's condition in the
- 21 evening of 22nd October as "stable". I think the
- 22 Chairman has asked them on that occasion: "Do you
- 23 mean stable per", but would you have considered
- 24 her condition to have been stable in the evening
- 25 of the 22nd?

- 1 A. (Pause) Well, she was stable but sick.
- 2 Q. And how sick would you have considered her to be?
- 3 A. Well, from the coma score and her lack of
- 4 responsiveness, then she was very sick. But I
- 5 think from a nursing perspective they could have
- 6 thought that she was sick but stable.
- 7 Q. So you think that --
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: "Stable" doesn't actually communicate
- 9 anything very much here, does it?
- 10 A. No, no, but --
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: For instance, you could be in intensive
- 12 care and in a stable condition, but so seriously
- 13 ill that you have to be in intensive care.
- 14 A. Yes.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 16 A. But it is a term that is used, and I think it
- 17 perhaps indicates that somebody isn't considering
- 18 that within the next half an hour something
- 19 drastic might happen to you.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 21 MR REID: If we can bring up 090-026-075, please.
- 22 This is the original drugs prescription chart.
- 23 I'm just going to ask you a few things about
- 24 this. Firstly, we've heard that when it comes to
- 25 IV medication that the first dose would generally

- 1 be given by a doctor rather than a nurse. Does
- 2 that correlate with your understanding of
- 3 practice in October 1996?
- 4 A. In lots of places, yes.
- 5 Q. And that sometimes a second dose might be given,
- 6 an IV by a nurse, but with the stronger drugs it
- 7 would still be a doctor's responsibility to give
- 8 them, for example, phenytoin?
- 9 A. I think it's quite likely that some nurses might
- 10 only have been giving intravenous antibiotics,
- 11 from the second dose onwards.
- 12 Q. Because it is self-taxing(?), for example?
- 13 A. Yes.
- 14 Q. We have also heard a difference of opinion on
- 15 double signing of drugs. In that I think Staff
- 16 Nurse Pollock said that the practice at the time
- 17 was that either a doctor and a nurse signed it or
- 18 two registrants would sign off the drug, and we
- 19 heard Dr Hughes say that in a lot of cases it was
- 20 simply that a doctor signed alone. What would be
- 21 your experience of how drugs were signed off in
- 22 October 1996?
- 23 A. From a nursing perspective, it would've been
- 24 common practice for two people to have checked,
- 25 but not necessarily signed the drug. So there

- 1 might just have been one signature but usually
- 2 there had to be a second checker. My experience,
- 3 doctors did their own drawing up and giving of
- 4 drugs and didn't have them checked by a nurse.
- 5 Q. Was that simply what happened? Were there any
- 6 policies that said differently at the time, or
- 7 was that simply what happened?
- 8 A. I think that's what happened. I don't recall any
- 9 policies at the time that described what medical
- 10 practice should have been in relation to
- 11 administering and checking drugs.
- 12 Q. When you say in locations that double checking
- 13 was done. You said that somebody would check the
- 14 dose. Would that sometimes just be the nurse
- 15 drawing up the drug for the doctor who'd
- 16 prescribed it?
- 17 A. Sorry, can you repeat that?
- 18 Q. You said that sometimes there would be a second
- 19 person double checking the dose, on occasion.
- 20 Would that sometimes just be the nurse double
- 21 checking the doctor?
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: No (overspeaking)
- 23 A. No, in my experience, I wouldn't have said that
- 24 nurses were regularly checking what the doctor
- 25 was giving if he was then going to give it.

- 1 MR REID: Okay.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: If the doctor was going to give it, the
- 3 practice was, I understand from you, he would
- 4 take responsibility or she would take
- 5 responsibility for administering that drug?
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: If it was to be administered by nurses,
- 8 it would be checked by a second nurse but not
- 9 necessarily signed for by a second nurse?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 12 MR REID: If we can look at some of the individual
- 13 drugs that were administered to Claire on 22nd
- 14 October. If we start with phenytoin. How
- 15 familiar do you think that staff nurses on a
- 16 general ward, such as Allen Ward, would have been
- with a drug such as phenytoin in October 1996?
- 18 A. I think that it depended on whether they
- 19 regularly admitted children with epilepsy. They
- 20 would probably know what phenytoin was because
- 21 it's been around a long time, and they would've
- 22 given it to children orally. So I think they
- 23 would have had some knowledge of the drug.
- 24 Q. And if you as a staff nurse were unfamiliar with
- 25 a drug, would you check anywhere to find out more

- 1 about the drug?
- 2 A. Yes, I would think that all wards had a British
- 3 national formulary there, for people to go and
- 4 look up what the drug was and what its side
- 5 effects were.
- 6 Q. In what circumstances would you, as a staff
- 7 nurse, check the formulary for a drug?
- 8 A. If this was something you weren't too sure about,
- 9 hadn't come across before, because you should
- 10 have an awareness and a knowledge of the things
- 11 that are happening to your patient, so that you
- 12 know what to look out for.
- 13 Q. So it is a case it's not just the dose, or
- 14 something of that nature you're checking, you're
- 15 checking to see what might happen as a result of
- 16 the administration of this drug?
- 17 A. Yes, and also to inform yourself, because parents
- 18 ask questions so you need to have some
- 19 information to impart.
- 20 Q. You don't want to look as if you don't know what
- 21 is going on?
- 22 A. No.
- 23 Q. So in terms of the phenytoin, what as a nurse
- 24 would you be considering you might have to do if
- 25 you knew a patient was receiving phenytoin?

- 1 A. Well, you'd want to know what it was being given
- 2 for and were there any immediate side effects to
- 3 it, which could affect you as a nurse and the
- 4 nursing care that you gave, and what the likely
- 5 outcome was.
- 6 Q. Would you want to have a cardiac monitor running
- 7 during phenytoin administration?
- 8 A. I think the guidance is quite clear on saying you
- 9 should have a monitor there. Yes, because my
- 10 understanding is that if you give it
- 11 intravenously then you can get cardiac
- 12 arrhythmias.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: That is for the initial dose, is it?
- 14 MR REID: Yes, and I think the --
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Preferably for it to continue but
- 16 essential for the initial administration?
- 17 A. Yes. I think that's what it says.
- 18 MR REID: Obviously all of these issues will be
- 19 canvassed this afternoon with Dr Aronson. Sorry
- 20 I'm asking you questions about it when we have Dr
- 21 Aronson waiting in the wings with it, but I'm
- 22 trying to get it from a nursing point of view.
- 23 Because, in terms of the cardiac monitor, we can
- see at 090-040-138, that there does seem to have
- 25 been a cardiac monitor in situ at the

- 1 administration of the phenytoin at 11.00 pm or
- 2 11.30 pm, whenever it was administered. But
- 3 there is no note of the same at the
- 4 administration at 2.45 pm in the afternoon. If
- 5 there was no cardiac monitor in situ during that
- 6 infusion, would you be critical of that fact?
- 7 A. Yes, I would because it should have been there.
- 8 I have to say I don't know how critical I would
- 9 be of the nurses, because this was a medical
- 10 procedure and not something nurses would've
- 11 necessarily had experience of.
- 12 Q. Well, would you have expected it to be noted that
- 13 a cardiac monitor was in situ, as it's noted
- 14 there by Staff Nurse McCann?
- 15 A. Could you repeat that?
- 16 Q. Staff Nurse McCann notes that a cardiac monitor
- 17 was there for 11.00 pm. If one had been there
- 18 for 2.45 pm, would you have expected that to have
- 19 been noted in the notes?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. If we go back then to the chart at 090-026-075,
- 22 the next drug that Claire receives. She has also
- 23 received diazepam at 12.15 but the next drug she
- 24 received was midazolam at 3.25, and we think that
- 25 dose may have been 12 ml. It is written as 120

- 1 ml there. As a nurse, what would you have
- 2 expected? Firstly, would nurses have been
- 3 familiar with midazolam in October 1996?
- 4 A. In a general ward environment I seem to think
- 5 that it would be unlikely.
- 6 Q. In those circumstances would you consider that
- 7 consulting the BNF would, at the very least,
- 8 advisable?
- 9 A. Yes.
- 10 Q. We know some of the possible side effects of
- 11 midazolam, and Dr Aronson will go into those
- 12 later on. In terms of the side effects what
- 13 would you as a nurse be looking out for in the
- 14 period after that?
- 15 A. Reduced level of consciousness and depressed
- 16 breathing.
- 17 Q. If you were unfamiliar with midazolam, would you
- 18 be expecting a doctor or a senior nurse to say to
- 19 you, "These are the side effects. Look out for
- these things"?
- 21 A. Yes.
- 22 Q. Would that be the doctor or the senior nurse or
- 23 either?
- 24 A. I think it could be either but also you, as an
- 25 individual, if you've not come across it before

- 1 would want to seek out the information to enable
- 2 you to look after the child effectively.
- 3 Q. Finally then the sodium valproate, would that
- 4 have been familiar to nurses on general ward in
- 5 October 1996?
- 6 A. If they were used to looking after children who
- 7 were having seizures.
- 8 Q. Would there have been any particular side effects
- 9 you would be looking out for that these would
- 10 involve?
- 11 A. I'm afraid I can't remember off the top of my
- 12 head.
- 13 Q. As a nurse, if you were aware of all of these
- 14 different drugs, the fact that Claire is
- 15 receiving all these different drugs, would that
- 16 raise any concern or alarm with you?
- 17 A. Well, it's an indicator that this is a child
- 18 whose condition isn't under control, and that
- 19 various things are having to be tried because
- 20 she's not regaining consciousness or she's still
- 21 fitting.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: It raises your level of concern about
- 23 the child?
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: You would expect that to prompt the

- 1 nurse to keep that child under closer review?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 MR REID: One moment, Mr Chairman. (Pause) If we then
- 4 go to the record of attacks observed at
- 5 090-042-144 please? You're aware of the sheet of
- 6 attacks observed, Mrs Ramsay?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 Q. The first incident that's recorded on there is a
- 9 record written by Mrs Roberts of:
- 10 "Frequently strong seizure at 3.25, of
- 11 duration of five minutes."
- 12 She stated afterwards "sleeping". It seems
- 13 from the evidence that Mrs Roberts witnessed the
- 14 seizure and then mentioned it to the nursing
- 15 staff. The nursing staff asked her to fill in
- 16 this particular document.
- 17 If you had been the nursing staff on at that
- 18 time, at 3.25, and you heard about the seizure
- 19 from the mother, what do you think you, as a
- 20 nurse, would have done as a result?
- 21 A. I would have asked the mother to describe it, and
- 22 I would have recorded it noting that it was
- 23 observed by the mother and not observed by the
- 24 nurse.
- Q. Would you have recorded it in the nursing notes?

- 1 A. Yes.
- 2 Q. It would have been recorded on this sheet in the
- 3 nursing notes?
- 4 A. Yes, because the nursing notes are the ongoing
- 5 permanent record and these charts have a habit of
- 6 getting lost over time. So that's not seen as
- 7 being the permanent record.
- 8 Q. Would you have informed a senior nurse or doctor?
- 9 A. Yes.
- 10 Q. Is it that you would inform the doctor if a
- 11 senior nurse was not available or would you
- 12 inform both?
- 13 A. I think, I think that it's best to go through the
- 14 senior person so that the doctors, the general
- 15 feeling, was you didn't want lots of nurses on a
- 16 ward bombarding the same doctor when he was only
- 17 next door or something. And so it was more
- 18 effective use of people's time if you could
- 19 channel it but also you would want to keep that
- 20 person informed of what was going.
- 21 I'm a believer in sharing information, not
- 22 keeping information to yourself, and then having
- 23 shared it somebody would decide who was going to
- 24 phone the doctor.
- 25 Q. That point is reflected in your report at

- 1 231-002-024, and if I can go to 231-002-030
- 2 please, at this point in your report you are
- 3 discussing the chain of command, I think is what
- 4 you've just said. You said in the second
- 5 paragraph of this the wards, in your experience:
- 6 "Operated with a chain of command. When a
- 7 nurse was concerned about a child she would share
- 8 this with the nurse in charge and/or the junior
- 9 doctor if he/she was present. In most cases, it
- 10 would be then for the junior doctor to contact
- 11 the registrar possibly prompted by the nurse, and
- 12 the registrar or junior doctor would contact the
- 13 consultant.
- 14 "However, if the nurses felt their concerns
- 15 were being inappropriately ignored then
- 16 contacting the consultant was an appropriate
- 17 action."
- 18 How often in your experience in the mid 1990s
- 19 would staff nurses contact the consultant
- 20 directly?
- 21 A. I would think rarely.
- 22 Q. How often would they contact the registrar
- 23 directly?
- 24 A. Probably quite frequently because the registrar
- 25 would have had a higher presence, and so have

- 1 developed a relationship possibly with them, but
- 2 it was usual to talk to the houseman first often
- 3 because they were the people who were most
- 4 readily available.
- 5 Q. In 1996, if there was a junior doctor you had to
- 6 book into, and you were unhappy with what they'd
- 7 said or if you thought they made a mistake, what
- 8 would be done then in the ward?
- 9 A. Well, you shared that with somebody and somebody
- 10 would talk to the registrar.
- 11 Q. Would it then reach the consultant?
- 12 A. I think it's unlikely that you would go straight
- 13 to a consultant. You would go through the
- 14 registrar.
- 15 Q. If we go on to the next paragraph in the report,
- 16 you say in the second sentence the nurse had a
- 17 duty, in your view, to ensure that a doctor was
- 18 aware of any changes in Claire's condition, and
- 19 you list there at the bottom the things you think
- 20 the doctor should have been aware of. The
- 21 numbers are 3.10 and 3.25 seizure we've
- 22 discussed, at 5.00 pm the failure to pass urine
- 23 for six hours, 7.00 pm when the blood pressure
- 24 was 130 over 70, at 9.00 pm when the coma score
- was at 6, and at 9.00 pm the episode of screaming

- 1 and raised pulse rate.
- 2 You said that the nursing record shows the
- 3 doctor was informed of the episode at 9.00 pm.
- 4 This is not confirmed by an entry in the medical
- 5 record, and it seems that for some of others that
- 6 the doctor wasn't informed.
- 7 What would be your general opinion of the
- 8 nursing care, in terms of the fact that it seems
- 9 that maybe a doctor may not have been informed of
- 10 those particular incidents?
- 11 A. Well, it's not really very good if you've got
- 12 some significant events and they aren't being
- 13 passed on to somebody else, because it then means
- 14 people who are directing her care don't have the
- 15 full picture of what's happening.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: None of this is ever quite
- 17 straightforward, is it, because for instance the
- 18 5.00 pm failure to pass urine for six hours but
- 19 we know that Dr Webb saw Claire at about 5.00
- 20 pm-ish and I think Dr Sands as well. They were
- 21 there looking after Claire and Dr Webb was coming
- 22 back, for instance, for an update on the
- 23 information on Claire's condition, is that
- 24 particular point about failure to pass urine for
- 25 six hours something he would have picked up?

- 1 A. Well, he would have seen it from the fluid chart
- 2 if he looked at the fluid charts.
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, that's right.
- 4 A. But then if there was a nurse present then you
- 5 would say, "She hasn't passed any urine for six
- 6 hours".
- 7 MR REID: Yes, okay, but we're a bit unsure about who
- 8 was where and when. The coma score of 6 and the
- 9 9.00 pm episode of screaming, it was Dr Hughes
- 10 who told us a few days ago that she was there at
- 11 about 9.30pm and she was called partly because of
- 12 Claire's condition, so that information was
- 13 available for her to pick up. In fact she was
- 14 specifically called to see Claire, wasn't she?
- 15 I think there's a belief she said she was
- 16 attending Claire to check the phenytoin levels,
- 17 for one thing, and to administer medication.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: I understand your point whether each of
- 19 these specific issues was referred individually
- 20 by a nurse to a doctor but, as it happened in
- 21 Claire's case, perhaps apart from the 3.10
- 22 seizure and the blood pressure at 7.00 pm, there
- 23 were doctors attending to Claire at about 5.00 pm
- and soon after 9.00 pm.
- 25 A. Yes.

- 1 MR REID: Before we move on to the final topic which
- 2 is communication with Claire's family, can I ask
- 3 you about the issue of consultant responsibility?
- 4 I think in your report, I'll just bring it up,
- 5 it's at 231-002-018, you state at the top:
- 6 "The identity of a child's consultant was
- 7 usually recorded on the nursing records, and I
- 8 know that Claire's consultant was Dr Steen. It
- 9 would not have been usual to make a specific
- 10 reference to this during the nursing handover,
- 11 however I believe the nurses could have concluded
- 12 that Dr Webb had taken over her care. Claire had
- 13 neurological problems. Dr Webb was a consultant
- 14 neurologist and spent a length of time examining
- 15 Claire and interviewing her mother, whereas Dr
- 16 Steen did not visit Claire."
- 17 You'll have seen the evidence of the different
- 18 nurses and the doctors over the last few weeks of
- 19 the inquiry, and it seems that their general
- 20 impression was that Dr Steen was the named
- 21 consultant but that Dr Webb was certainly
- 22 providing advice at the very minimum.
- 23 Can I just ask you why you think that the
- 24 nurses could have concluded that Dr Webb might
- 25 have taken over her care?

- 1 A. Because, as I've said here, I think he was the
- 2 one that was visible and she had a neurological
- 3 problem.
- 4 Q. What would you have expected to have been done if
- 5 the consultant care had changed from Dr Steen to
- 6 Dr Webb, from a nursing point of view?
- 7 A. Well, good practice would have been that somebody
- 8 would tell you that that child was now being
- 9 cared for by Dr Webb. You would then change the
- 10 bit on the care plan that says who the child was
- 11 admitted under, and there would have to be
- 12 changes to the information system so that the
- 13 hospital record showed who was the child's
- 14 consultant.
- 15 Q. You would have expected not only for there to be
- 16 a note in the nursing notes but also for some of
- 17 the forms which the assigned consultant is noted
- 18 to have been changed formally?
- 19 A. Yes, but I think that it probably was a bit more
- 20 lax than that.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Maybe you could comment on this, was it
- 22 a situation where the nurses would have been sure
- 23 that Dr Webb had taken over?
- 24 A. No.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: You wouldn't change the identity of the

- 1 responsible consultant on the nursing care plan
- 2 unless you were clear that there had been a
- 3 change in consultant responsibility?
- 4 A. No, and you'd probably do it following on from
- 5 something being written in the medical record.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 7 A. So "Now under the care of Dr Webb" would prompt
- 8 the nurse to then change some nursing.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but that was written in to the
- 10 record by Dr Webb or by a junior doctor to say
- 11 that fact.
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: There's a difference between you. The
- 14 comment which is highlighted on the screen at the
- 15 moment is your conclusion from the papers that
- 16 you could understand if the nurses had concluded
- 17 that Dr Webb had taken over Claire's care, but
- 18 that's something short of saying that they would
- 19 have known that he'd taken over and therefore
- 20 should have altered the documentation.
- 21 A. Yes, yes.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 23 MR REID: If a consultant neurologist had maybe taken
- 24 over the care of Claire, would you have expected,
- 25 in 1996, for Claire to have been transferred say

- 1 to the paediatric neurology ward?
- 2 A. If there was a bed available then that would seem
- 3 the logical place for her to have been.
- 4 Q. But it happened on occasion that a paediatric
- 5 neurology patient was on a general ward, because
- 6 there wasn't enough room in the paediatric
- 7 neurology ward?
- 8 A. Yes.
- 9 Q. If I can then move to communication with Claire's
- 10 parents and that's in your report at 231-002-032?
- 11 Can I ask you just in general, from your
- 12 reading of the nursing notes, do you think there
- 13 was sufficient notation in the nursing notes of
- 14 what was communicated to Claire's parents?
- 15 A. In retrospect probably not, but I think at the
- 16 time people didn't write very much about the
- 17 conversations they had with parents, other than
- 18 if there was something specific that was of
- 19 concern to the parents or concern to the nurse in
- 20 having had the discussion with them.
- 21 So I think it wasn't unusual to have comments
- 22 that the parents were there or the parents had
- 23 gone home or something but not much detail.
- 24 Q. I think you say that actually in your report
- 25 there, you say:

- 1 "The most entries in nursing evaluations are
- 2 just concerning whether Claire's parents were
- 3 attending or not, and one entry shows 'Parents
- 4 concerned as Claire is usually very active'.
- 5 [But you state] There are no records giving even
- 6 brief details of information shared with them and
- 7 any discussions they had with the doctor."
- 8 Are you saying that although the practice at
- 9 the time that not much was recorded, that there
- 10 was still an insufficient recording?
- 11 A. Yes, I think so. I don't know if --
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: It's the next paragraph.
- 13 MR REID: Over the next one, yes, I was going onto the
- 14 next paragraph. You say:
- "It is my opinion that as a minimum there
- 16 should have been a record of the information
- 17 given to Claire's parents, their understanding
- 18 and concerns."
- 19 You give a useful example:
- 20 "Parents anxious that Claire is not responding
- 21 as usual. Seen by Dr X who's advised them of
- 22 likely brain problems. Medicines have been
- 23 explained and parents appeared to understand."
- 24 You consider that to be the minimum?
- 25 A. Yes, because often there was a communication

- 1 record sheet where people could specifically
- 2 document communication issues predominantly with,
- 3 with parents, so yes, this is my view that,
- 4 although something was written, it wasn't enough.
- 5 Q. We've discussed already the fact that nurses
- 6 generally are on the front line of communication
- 7 with the family since they're there the most
- 8 often, though, of course, whenever the doctors
- 9 attend you would hope that they would explain
- 10 certain elements of the condition and the
- 11 treatment to the parents that would be fair to
- 12 say?
- 13 A. The doctor would explain.
- 14 Q. Yes, but the nurse would be the first point of
- 15 call but the doctors would explain things
- 16 whenever they are present.
- 17 A. Yes.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Just one moment. Mr Fortune?
- 19 MR FORTUNE: Mrs Ramsay has just mentioned there
- 20 should be or may have been a communication sheet.
- 21 A. Yes.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: That's in her report. There is
- 23 sometimes a document of that nature.
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 MR FORTUNE: Is there any particular example in the

- 1 records that would actually go under that title,
- 2 as opposed to nursing records or relative
- 3 counselling records?
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: From my reading of it, the closest we
- 5 have is the relative counselling records but that
- 6 comes at a later stage after Claire's collapse.
- 7 A. Yes, it would have been a similar sheet to that
- 8 but usually labelled "Communication record".
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: But it's not on the records we have. I
- 10 can build on that, and thank Mr Fortune for his
- 11 point. Would you have expected a pro forma
- 12 sheet, such as that to be present in the nursing
- 13 records?
- 14 A. Not necessarily. It was something that some
- 15 people had and others didn't.
- 16 MR FORTUNE: Thank you.
- 17 MR REID: Was it (overspeaking)
- 18 A. It wasn't regarded as an essential.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Has it subsequently developed as an
- 20 essential or not?
- 21 A. Yes, I think, I think they're in fairly common
- 22 use these days.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Let's make sure there aren't two
- 24 separate points here. Is one point that in some
- 25 hospitals there would have been a separate record

- 1 sheet for communications with the parents but,
- 2 even if that was not the position in the Royal,
- 3 you would have expected that the nursing records
- 4 would have recorded something along the lines,
- 5 which you have under the third paragraph under
- 6 section 4.3.4?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 9 MR REID: One of the key events obviously in Claire's
- 10 case, it's just after 9.00 pm, Claire's parents
- 11 are about to leave Allen Ward, after speaking
- 12 briefly to the nursing staff to tell them that
- 13 they were leaving. That's at around 9.00/9.15
- 14 pm.
- 15 At that point, from your impression of the
- 16 notes, can you see any indication that the nurses
- 17 appreciated the seriousness of Claire's condition
- 18 at that stage?
- 19 A. No, because my understanding is that there wasn't
- 20 a discussion about "We're now thinking of going
- 21 home", it was a sort of chance good bye as they
- 22 passed somebody at the desk.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: No, it's a bit more than that. I think
- 24 Mrs Roberts went to the desk to say her husband
- 25 and their sons were there with her, but she went

- 1 to the desk to say specifically that she was
- 2 going home.
- 3 A. Right.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: I think that's right. So she went for
- 5 that purpose.
- 6 A. Yes, but I was thinking in terms of the nurse
- 7 picking up on it.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes (overspeaking) what the nurse's
- 9 interpretation was?
- 10 A. Yes, yes.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: I see, but I'm not sure, just to check
- 12 you've picked this up, as it happened when she
- 13 was there a phone call came in from a relative in
- 14 Scotland asking about Claire's condition and in
- 15 essence Mrs Roberts was on the phone saying
- 16 "Well, look, you know, she's okay. We're about
- 17 to go home".
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Now if that --
- 20 MR FORTUNE: The inquirer was a nurse, if you
- 21 remember, sir.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, sorry. The relative was a nurse
- 23 who was actually a --
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: If that exchange was overheard, even in

- 1 part, then that would confirm that the nurses in
- 2 the Royal were not conscious of the state that
- 3 Claire was in at that time.
- 4 A. Yes, so I think the answer to the question is
- 5 that they weren't sufficiently worried about her
- 6 to keep the parents there.
- 7 MR REID: Do you consider that they should have been?
- 8 A. Yes.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: That rather begs the question, but you
- 10 may or may not know this but one of the family's
- 11 big concerns is whether the doctors had picked up
- 12 on how ill Claire was, never mind the nurses.
- 13 I'm sure it shouldn't be as hierarchical as
- 14 this but if the doctors were not alert to how
- 15 serious ill Claire was, then the nurses would be
- 16 at a lower level of alertness themselves,
- 17 wouldn't they?
- 18 A. Absolutely.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: So even though the Glasgow Coma Scale
- 20 score is low, even though she's pretty much
- 21 unconscious -- and we now know what was just a
- 22 few hours away -- at that point the nurses would
- 23 not have been alert to the extent of the danger
- 24 that Claire was in.
- 25 A. No.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: Because if the doctors who see a
- 2 patient don't give you that strong indication
- 3 then the nurses are more likely to miss it too.
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 MR REID: Let me ask you it this way -- sorry.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: Sorry.
- 9 MR CAMPBELL: [inaudible: no microphone]
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 11 MR CAMPBELL: With reference to the evidence of Dr
- 12 Sands, transcript page 233, I think day 48.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Do you have a date, Mr Campbell?
- 14 MR CAMPBELL: Sorry?
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Do you have a date? So it's Dr Sands
- 16 is it?
- 17 MR GREEN: 19 October.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 19 MR CAMPBELL: It's 233, line 18 and also 235, line 7.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 21 MR CAMPBELL: In which he's talking about a gap and
- 22 his acceptance that he should have had a
- 23 conversation with the nurses to communicate the
- 24 extent of his concern.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but that is slightly premised in

- 1 Dr Sands had left at around 5.00 pm, or between
- 2 5.00 pm and 6.00 pm, is that right?
- 3 MR CAMPBELL: But he was the main medic on the ground
- 4 in the ward. Dr Webb is in and out, I think on
- 5 two occasions through the day.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 7 MR CAMPBELL: But Dr Sands was in effect in charge of
- 8 Claire's care in the ward that day.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: Right, so this was the point in the
- 10 transcript, Mr Campbell, is it, on page 233
- 11 is ...?
- 12 MR CAMPBELL: I think it's line 18.
- 13 MR GREEN: I have to say, I should put it on record
- 14 that I do not accept the proposition that Dr
- 15 Sands was in charge in the ward that day.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: I understand that, and I understand
- 17 this may be a slightly loose way of describing
- 18 what was going on. Yes. Okay, so do you get the
- 19 point that's been made, Mrs Ramsay? I'm not sure
- 20 I'm quite picking it up from the transcript.
- 21 The question at line 14 is was Claire actually
- 22 the sickest child in the ward and Dr Sands says:
- 23 "Yes. Looking back, and having seen now the
- 24 notes, that's my impression."
- 25 So this is Dr Sands looking backwards and

- 1 saying that Claire was actually the sickest child
- 2 on the ward.
- 3 MR REID: Mr Chairman, maybe Mr Campbell is relying on
- 4 the live note that transcends reference rather
- 5 than the official transcripts?
- 6 MR CAMPBELL: [inaudible: no microphone] I checked it
- 7 earlier on, on the laptop in front of me here.
- 8 MR GREEN: The official transcript reference is 233.
- 9 The relevant questioning begins at line 6:
- 10 "Then in relation to the other children on the
- 11 ward whose care you have had during the day,
- 12 where would you place Claire?
- 13 "A. I would have said at the top of the list in
- 14 terms of children who were unwell. That's to the
- 15 best of my knowledge having looked at Claire's
- 16 chart and looked at some of the other patients.
- 17 Bits of the other patients' charts that we've
- 18 seen."
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 20 MR GREEN: Then he goes on to accept, in answer to the
- 21 question:
- 22 "Was Claire actually the sickest child on the
- 23 wards throughout the day? [This is line 18 on
- 24 233] Again, looking back and having seen more of
- 25 the notes [then there's a pause] well, I suppose

- 1 that's unfair because I haven't seen all the
- 2 notes from the patients on the ward. That's my
- 3 impression".
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes. Do I take it, Mr Campbell, that
- 5 what you are doing here is emphasising the point
- 6 that I was asking Mrs Ramsay about, about the
- 7 level of awareness which the nurses would have
- 8 had of the extent of Claire's sickness?
- 9 MR CAMPBELL: That is the point I'm getting to, Mr
- 10 Chairman, however there is a difference in the
- 11 transcript section which has been referred to
- 12 just now and the section that I wish to draw the
- 13 attention towards.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: All right.
- 15 MR CAMPBELL: That is a question for Ms Danes.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: What page are you on now?
- 17 MR CAMPBELL: I'm on the live, the laptop version so
- 18 to speak.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: I think we're all on that. No? Sorry,
- 20 we're not, okay.
- 21 MR CAMPBELL: Page 233, line 8 was the question. The
- 22 second portion of that question reads as follows:
- "Now for Dr Stevenson and the nurses, they are
- 24 the touch point or the contact point with the
- 25 parents, so if they don't fully understand it,

- 1 absent yourself or Dr Webb coming and
- 2 specifically discussing it with the parents, then
- 3 it's difficult to see how the parents will be
- 4 accurately informed about the condition of their
- 5 child. Would you accept that?
- 6 "A. I think there may have been that gap in
- 7 understanding."
- 8 Then slightly further on, it's 235, line 7 and
- 9 the question starts at line 5:
- 10 "What discussion do you think you should have
- 11 had with the nursing staff at that time before
- 12 you went off duty?
- 13 "A. As one of the clinicians there I think I
- 14 should have been part of the discussion with the
- 15 nursing staff to say that this is a girl we're
- 16 concerned about for these reasons."
- 17 Those are the points, Mr Chairman. In fact,
- 18 there was a gap, and Dr Sands was accepting that
- 19 there was a gap between his belief about Claire
- 20 and his communication of that to the nurses.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: All right, it's then -- sorry.
- 22 MR GREEN: Sorry, that's only a partial part of the
- 23 picture. If we go to page 238 on the transcript
- 24 for that day, and to line 17. I'm not going to
- 25 read out all the preamble, the context is whether

- 1 Dr Sands did enough to make sure the nurses
- 2 understood.
- 3 The question at line 17:
- 4 "Q. Did it not fall to you to make sure they
- 5 understood that?
- 6 "A. That's before Dr Webb's visit.
- 7 "Q. Yes.
- 8 "A. I think again I would have expressed my
- 9 concerns to the nursing staff and told them I
- 10 thought Claire was very neurologically unwell,
- 11 and said we needed a neurologist to see Claire
- 12 because I'm not sure what's going on here. I
- 13 suspect this may be but I don't know."
- 14 The question over the page is put and elicits
- 15 the answer that my learned friend, Mr Campbell,
- 16 has just put. I simply raise the point at this
- 17 stage because while it was accurately quoted by
- 18 Mr Campbell, that sort of partial quotation can
- 19 be apt to mislead unless the full picture is put.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Your point is that there was a
- 21 run in to the question in the reference that Mr
- 22 Campbell made?
- 23 MR GREEN: Exactly. Where Dr Sands indicated that he
- 24 thought he had expressed to the nurses that
- 25 Claire was very neurologically unwell.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: Right, and in terms, that piece of Dr
- 2 Sands' evidence is him explaining to them why
- 3 he's going to look for Dr Webb?
- 4 MR GREEN: Yes.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Let me pick that up with you, Mrs
- 6 Ramsay. Then Dr Webb, who would not normally be
- 7 around this ward, he is brought in and the nurses
- 8 would have seen him there at different points.
- 9 That in itself would indicate there was something
- 10 more that needed investigating with Claire, would
- 11 it?
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: The nurses would pick up on that, and
- 14 so you've got his intervention and you've got the
- 15 drugs he prescribed and you've got the Glasgow
- 16 Coma Scale, and you've got her unconsciousness.
- 17 Really what that feeds into is maybe resetting
- 18 the context for the question, "To what extent
- 19 should the nurses have been alert to how
- 20 seriously ill Claire was as Tuesday afternoon
- 21 moved into Tuesday evening and Tuesday night?"
- 22 A. I think they should have been alert to it because
- 23 there were all those indicators, but I think that
- 24 jointly between them and the medical staff nobody
- 25 was having that conversation and maybe they felt

- 1 she did go some long periods without seeing a
- 2 doctor, I think, and so that was interpreted that
- 3 she might be sick but things were jogging along.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Another way to look at it is this, to
- 5 the extent that there could possibly be any
- 6 criticism of the nurses for not saying to Mr and
- 7 Mrs Roberts at about 9.00 pm, "We don't really
- 8 think you should go home without speaking to a
- 9 doctor", and for the doctor to explain how ill
- 10 Claire was, the doctors had been coming backwards
- 11 and forwards during the day.
- 12 There was Mrs Roberts there constantly, for
- 13 long periods Mr Roberts was there. The
- 14 grandparents were there. Let's set aside their
- 15 sons for the moment. There were many occasions
- 16 during the day when any one of a number of
- 17 doctors could have sat down with Mr and Mrs
- 18 Roberts to explain things.
- 19 A. Yes.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: If that hadn't been done, and it
- 21 appears not to have been done, then the question
- 22 is to what extent would it be fair to be critical
- 23 of the nurse at around 9.00 pm for letting the
- 24 Roberts' leave without advising them of the
- 25 seriousness of Claire's condition?

- 1 A. I think if there was situation where the nurses
- 2 knew something but the parents didn't, then they
- 3 had a responsibility to ensure that the parents
- 4 were in the picture. And so I think that would
- 5 have been the sort of conversation you've just
- 6 described of getting a doctor to come and see the
- 7 parents before, before they left and that would
- 8 have given them an opportunity to decide whether
- 9 or not they should leave.
- 10 So I think that they probably didn't know what
- 11 the parents knew and so couldn't have that
- 12 particular conversation. I think that there were
- 13 opportunities for nurses to find out what the
- 14 parents knew.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Sorry, Mr Quinn, am I right in
- 16 understanding that Mr and Mrs Roberts hadn't
- 17 spoken to a doctor from about 5.00 pm?
- 18 MR QUINN: That's correct. Yes, that is correct.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you. (Pause)
- 20 MR QUINN: Just to remind everyone, and put it onto
- 21 the record, the purpose for Mrs Roberts going to
- 22 the nurses' station was twofold. One, that was
- 23 to say, "We're going to go now, is that okay?",
- 24 and check with the nurses. The second one was to
- 25 ensure that the nurses were aware that Claire's

- 1 bed sides were up, because she might have been in
- 2 the habit of getting out of bed. So that was
- 3 something specific that was said to the nurses.
- 4 From my recollection -- I haven't checked the
- 5 record -- Mrs Roberts I think may have spoken to
- 6 her cousin, or certainly said there was some
- 7 indirect conversation with the cousin in Scotland
- 8 who was on the phone who was also a nurse.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: As I remember the evidence that call
- 10 came in, and it happened it was taken by the
- 11 nurse at the station and who was able to hand the
- 12 phone straight to Mrs Roberts because she was
- 13 already there.
- 14 MR QUINN: That's correct. That is correct. The
- 15 nurse would have known what Mrs Roberts was
- 16 telling her cousin in that she was reassuring her
- 17 cousin in Scotland that Claire was fine.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, yes. Okay, thank you.
- 19 MR REID: Mr Chairman, there are a few things that
- 20 just arose with the transcript. Just to put on
- 21 record as a practical note, the Transcend(?) live
- 22 note uses different referencing from the official
- 23 transcripts which are available for bringing up,
- 24 and so it would be useful if any of my learned
- 25 friends are referring to the transcripts that

- 1 they refer to the official transcripts as much as
- 2 they can, because that's the version that we can
- 3 bring up and so hopefully we don't get the --
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Those are the transcripts which are
- 5 found on the inquiry website?
- 6 MR REID: Yes.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 8 MR REID: Because the difficulty is that the Transcend
- 9 note has additional words and so on added to it
- 10 and so the page numbers and line numbers are
- 11 different. Normally the page numbers are higher
- 12 than those that appear on the Transcend software.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 14 MR REID: It's just to put that on record.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 16 MR REID: I take your point, Mr Chairman, not to load
- 17 too much on Staff Nurse McCann and the night
- 18 nurses because there may have been communication
- 19 during the day but let's just finish off the
- 20 issue at around 9.00 pm.
- 21 At that point, the nurses who were caring for
- 22 Claire would have been aware of seizure 9.00 pm,
- 23 would have been aware of her Glasgow Coma Scales
- 24 and the medication she was receiving.
- 25 They would be aware of those things, is that

- 1 right, Mrs Ramsay?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 MR REID: Claire's mother then comes to the nursing
- 4 station and says, "We're thinking of going now.
- 5 Can you please make sure that the bed sides are
- 6 up because I don't want Claire falling out of
- 7 bed?" At that point, even if they hadn't been
- 8 made aware of the seriousness of Claire's
- 9 condition by the doctors, do you consider that
- 10 maybe the nurses with the knowledge that they had
- 11 might have realised of their own initiative that
- 12 Claire's condition was serious?
- 13 MR MCALINDEN: With this question I think it would be
- 14 appropriate for the witness to be made fully
- aware of the description of the 9.00 pm event, as
- 16 given by Mrs Roberts, because it certainly
- 17 significantly differs from the cold written
- 18 description in the notes?
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: (overspeaking) very short note on the
- 20 attack sheet, yes?
- 21 MALE SPEAKER: Yes.
- 22 MR REID: Yes, would it be fair Mrs Roberts described
- 23 it, if I recollect properly, that she thought it
- 24 was Claire trying to wake up out of her sleep
- 25 effectively? The note on the record of attacks

- 1 observed says, "An episode of screaming and
- 2 raising of arms."
- 3 Mrs Roberts considered it at the time as
- 4 Claire trying to wake up from her sleep and being
- 5 restless somewhat in her sleep.
- 6 Given that GCS score and the medication that
- 7 was being received, do you consider that the
- 8 nurses at around 9.00 pm should have been aware
- 9 of the seriousness of the condition regardless
- 10 perhaps of whatever they'd been told by the
- 11 doctors?
- 12 A. Well, they should have been aware that she was
- 13 sick and in all likelihood the sickest child on
- 14 the ward.
- 15 MR REID: In that situation, if the parent comes up
- 16 and says, "We're thinking of going now", do you
- 17 think that the nurse should have contacted a
- 18 doctor to say that the Roberts were leaving?
- 19 A. I'm not too sure whether informing people that
- 20 parents are leaving is something that you would
- 21 do. I think if you openly have a child that
- 22 everybody knows is sick and they're going, you
- 23 would check with the doctor that there isn't
- 24 something that he wants to say to them before
- 25 they go.

- 1 So I suppose I'm struggling to give you a
- 2 clear view on that one.
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: If I can come back to your answer a few
- 4 moments, but your point was that you don't know
- 5 what the nurses might not have known the extent
- 6 of the Roberts' existing knowledge?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: In other words, the nurses might not
- 9 have known to what extent, if any, the Roberts
- 10 had had been sat down at 5.00 pm by Dr Webb to
- 11 explain things?
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 14 MR REID: If we can then look --
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Sorry, just to make a point. It's just
- one of the many awful aspects of Claire's case
- 17 that her parents did go home in the circumstances
- 18 that they did, and it would be very, very easy to
- 19 write this bit of the report because that should
- 20 not have happened.
- 21 The question I'm struggling with a bit more at
- 22 the moment is whether, in fact, there's blame
- 23 attached to a particular nurse or nurses for
- 24 that.
- 25 It's a more defined aspect of the very obvious

- 1 and simple point, which is that Mr and Mrs
- 2 Roberts should not have left with an entirely
- 3 mistaken understanding about Claire's condition.
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 MR REID: In terms of Claire's care in paediatric
- 6 intensive care, a note from your report that
- 7 you've no criticism of her care in paediatric
- 8 intensive care, is that correct?
- 9 A. Yes.
- 10 MR REID: We then move on to the aftermath of Claire's
- 11 death. I asked each of the nurses whether they
- 12 had been involved in any audit or investigation
- 13 or discussion following Claire's death, and none
- 14 of them could certainly recall any audit or
- 15 investigation or discussion.
- 16 Would you have expected any discussion among
- 17 nurses following a child's death in October 1996?
- 18 A. I think the situation was not unusual.
- 19 MR REID: I presume you mean the situation that there
- 20 was no discussion?
- 21 A. Yes.
- 22 MR REID: The situation that a child had died after
- 23 being on a general paediatric ward for just over
- 24 24 hours, was that unusual?
- 25 A. It, it would have been unusual but I think

- 1 possibly the elements that meant that there
- 2 wasn't any great discussion would be that there
- 3 doesn't appear to have been recognised error at
- 4 the time.
- 5 If a child had died as a result of a clear
- 6 untoward incident, then I think even in 1996
- 7 something would have happened to reflect on that.
- 8 A child dying and somebody giving an
- 9 explanation of that, where people aren't thought
- 10 to have failed, then wouldn't necessarily have
- 11 prompted any discussion amongst the nurses.
- 12 MR REID: If I can speculate for a moment, if say, for
- 13 example, it had been considered that it had been
- 14 thought in October 1996 that Claire had suffered
- 15 fluid overload, would that be something that
- 16 might be discussed among the nurses on the ward?
- 17 A. Only if the fluid overload has resulted from an
- 18 inaccurate administration of the IV. So if the
- 19 nurse had set the pump at the wrong level and so
- 20 too much had gone in over too short a period of
- 21 time then that would have led to a discussion.
- 22 Or not necessarily a discussion, I think the
- 23 person who had set the discipline.
- 24 Q. Effectively there would only have been a
- 25 discussion with nurses if there was a, so to

- 1 speak, definite iatrogenic reason for the death
- 2 of the child?
- 3 A. Yes, that is my opinion.
- 4 Q. Would there be discussions if there was a
- 5 possible iatrogenic reason for the death?
- 6 A. I think at the time, no.
- 7 Q. Only in definite circumstances?
- 8 A. Yes.
- 9 Q. What would you -- sorry, Mr Fortune has a point.
- 10 MR FORTUNE: Rather than have an exercise in
- 11 speculation, could my learned friend not go back
- 12 in time and indeed deal with the contents of the
- 13 relative counselling record which is 090-028-088
- 14 and use the contents of that now for a discussion
- 15 about any discussion between nurses after the
- 16 death, but in particular we would invite my
- 17 learned friend to ask Mrs Ramsay about the
- 18 contents of that document and whether there are
- 19 any similar records that are to be found in PICU
- 20 because during the day there must have been a
- 21 constant attendance by the parents and at least
- 22 one consultant in PICU at all times, whether that
- 23 was Dr McKaigue, Dr Taylor or indeed anybody
- 24 else, because these documents would form the
- 25 basis, surely, for any audit or discussion later

- 1 between nursing staff and clinicians.
- 2 MR REID: I think you have said, Mrs Ramsay, already
- 3 that the relative counselling record is the only
- 4 sheet that the inquiry or you have seen that
- 5 solely concerns communications with the family;
- 6 would that be fair to say?
- 7 A. Yes.
- 8 Q. Picking up with Mr Fortune's point that there may
- 9 have been some sort of constant communication
- 10 between the nursing staff in PICU and Claire's
- 11 parents throughout 23rd October would you expect
- 12 any record of that to have been taken in October
- 13 1996?
- 14 A. Where specific information had been imparted then
- 15 good practice would be that you would make a note
- 16 of that, but I do not think -- I wouldn't have
- 17 expected a sort of verbatim record of -- so --
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Surely that depends on the
- 19 circumstances in which you move into PICU? If
- 20 you are, let us suppose we have child who is
- 21 terribly injured in a car accident and that child
- 22 is taken into PICU and that is the point of the
- 23 treatment starting, then you would expect or
- 24 sorry would you expect then that the PICU record
- 25 would show discussions with the parents about

- 1 what the state of the child's health was, how
- 2 much at risk she was of dying and things of that
- 3 nature? I am asking for a contrast because in
- 4 this case when Claire went to PICU and her
- 5 parents were there and called to the hospital in
- 6 the early hours of the Wednesday morning they
- 7 were in effect told at that point that there was
- 8 nothing more that could be done. There wasn't
- 9 revealing(?) then was for the brainstem tests,
- 10 but there was no updating to be done or no, "We
- 11 will come back to you and tell you in a few hours
- 12 if there is a change in condition or see how she
- 13 responds to treatment". In fact when they
- 14 arrived in PICU they were told that Claire was in
- 15 real terms "dead"; is that not right? There is
- 16 not in fact the extant of any exchanges which a
- 17 parent has with the consultant or nurses in PICU?
- 18 A. I am not sure that I am fully understanding the
- 19 question in order to give a response.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, I am sorry. I understood the
- 21 intervention from the floor from Mr Fortune who
- 22 represented Dr Steen was to the affect that the
- 23 record that you have now in front of you is the
- 24 only record we have of discussions with Mr and Mr
- 25 Roberts through the, although it is dated 22nd it

- 1 is actually 23rd October, okay, and he was
- 2 raising a query about whether there might have
- 3 also been discussions in PICU with the consultant
- 4 in PICU or with the nurses in PICU, right,
- 5 because there do not appear to be any records of
- 6 such discussions?
- 7 A. Well, a record to show that the parents had been
- 8 spoken to by consultants I think most of the
- 9 information because it is very negative would
- 10 have had to have been imparted by a doctor and
- 11 then reinforced or nurses explaining things. So,
- 12 yes, some sort of record of what their
- 13 understanding was, although it says here that
- 14 they understand the explanation. There were
- 15 several hours, were there not, after she was
- 16 admitted and so their state at the time possibly
- 17 to have written that down, so there is not a lot
- 18 of detail there or any detail. So, yes, it would
- 19 have been good practice to have written some more
- 20 of it.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay and when you say good practice to
- 22 have written more of it, is that in these
- 23 relative counselling notes or in PICU or both?
- 24 A. In the -- well, the relative counselling notes
- 25 that's from PICU, isn't it?

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: It's not.
- 2 A. My understanding was that I thought that was an
- 3 attachment to the intensive care documents.
- 4 There should have been both because intensive
- 5 care was a totally separate environment with
- 6 totally separate records and the people looking
- 7 after her there, needed to keep their own ongoing
- 8 account of what happened during the day.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, Mr Quinn, could I ask you, could
- 10 you find out from Mr and Mrs Roberts if they had
- 11 any discussions with the consultant in PICU as
- 12 opposed to Dr Steen and Dr Webb?
- 13 MR QUINN: Yes.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you very much.
- 15 MR QUINN: I have consulted with Dr McKaigue, in
- 16 relation to that issue and his evidence would be
- 17 that he had no communications at all with Mr and
- 18 Mrs Roberts.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, sorry, Mr Ferguson, just --
- 20 MR QUINN: We will find out.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, if you found out, but just --
- 22 MR QUINN: My recollection, from my instructions, are
- 23 that they at least spoke to Drs Webb and Steen.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, just Mr Ferguson is going to ask
- 25 in case -- did you hear that Mr Ferguson?

- 1 MR FERGUSON: Yes.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 3 MR REID: Okay. I also seek guidance from Mr Fortune
- 4 as to whether he is making the point that the
- 5 note is part of the other(?) notes, or whether he
- 6 is saying that these occurrences actually
- 7 happened on the ward rather than in PICU.
- 8 (Pause)
- 9 MR FORTUNE: I'm not quite sure who goes first, but so
- 10 far as this note is concerned it is part of the
- 11 PICU records and clearly the entries were made at
- 12 a time when Claire was in PICU. What we have
- 13 asked is whether there are any other records
- 14 similar in nature, however described, that relate
- 15 to discussions between Mr and Mrs Roberts and any
- 16 other consultant during the course of the time
- 17 that Claire was in PICU.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, so this note that we have of the
- 19 relative counselling record is part of the PICU
- 20 record, as you understand it?
- 21 MR FORTUNE: Apparently so, sir.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, that's fine.
- 23 MR FORTUNE: As you look at the record it is clearly
- 24 an incomplete record on the right-hand side and
- 25 indeed it is difficult to work out whose writing

- 1 it is.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, okay.
- 3 MR QUINN: There was no other contact with any other
- 4 consultant other than Drs Webb and Steen.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: In a sense that's not unexpected
- 6 because of the state that Claire was in there is
- 7 in effect what the parents were being told
- 8 there's nothing more that could be done for her,
- 9 so it's the contrast between that situation and
- 10 the one I described of a child being brought into
- 11 PICU after a car crash where you do have direct
- 12 contact with the consultant?
- 13 MR QUINN: Yes.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, thank you.
- 15 MR REID: Can I just bring you, Mrs Ramsay, to
- something in your report 231-002-033, please.
- 17 This is just about PICU and you write at that
- 18 section:
- 19 "The nursing care plan is of an appropriate
- 20 standard. There are records giving details of
- 21 the discussion between the doctors and Claire's
- 22 parents. I believe these are a satisfactory
- 23 record."
- I think you've said perhaps would maybe have
- 25 liked a little bit more in the record; would that

- 1 be correct?
- 2 A. Yes, I'm sort of reflecting on what led me to say
- 3 this. The document we've just seen I saw in the
- 4 context of being a PICU record and I felt that
- 5 things had been described. What I can't recall
- 6 is whether throughout her stay in PICU there was
- 7 any record of discussions that nurses were having
- 8 with parents that maybe portrayed what
- 9 information had been given to them or what had
- 10 been said to them or what their fears and
- 11 anxieties were and I'm afraid I can't recall
- 12 that, but they would have been some expectations
- 13 that if there was a nurse looking after her,
- 14 which there would have been, and she was
- 15 interacting with the parents then there would be
- 16 some record to reflect that interaction.
- 17 Q. Would you expect that even if there wasn't a
- 18 sheet that had the purpose of recording that sort
- 19 of discussion?
- 20 A. Yes, yes.
- 21 Q. For example, would you have expected that in the
- 22 general PICU nursing notes?
- 23 A. Yes, because of the distress of the situation and
- 24 the fact that the parents would have been there
- 25 all the time and so it's just a part of the

- 1 totality of nursing care that you're looking
- 2 after the parents as well and so you would then
- 3 record some of that.
- 4 Q. If we can go back to the very first point of Mr
- 5 Fortune's intervention where he wanted me to put
- 6 some of the detail of 090-028-088 to you. I
- 7 think you said already that only in a definite
- 8 iatrogenic case that you would have considered an
- 9 order for discussion usual in October 1996. We
- 10 can see from this chart, and I'm not going to go
- 11 through everything, but there was an explanation
- 12 that Claire had swelling of the brain and could
- 13 possibly be brain dead and then the third
- 14 paragraph the brainstem tests showed Claire's
- 15 brain had died and that her brain had swollen and
- 16 when it was asked why the brain had swollen it
- 17 was explained that it was probably caused by a
- 18 virus. In those circumstances would you have
- 19 expected any sort of audit or discussion with
- 20 nurses?
- 21 A. No, because from a nursing perspective it would
- 22 have been assumed that she has just died of an
- 23 illness.
- Q. You said that it was unusual that a child would
- 25 have died on a general ward and it wouldn't be a

- 1 usual occurrence anyway in October 1996. If
- 2 you're the ward sister of that ward and a child
- 3 died what would you expect of them following that
- 4 death?
- 5 A. Well, as the ward sister, if I hadn't been there
- 6 I would have expected somebody to have told me
- 7 when I got back and informed me of the
- 8 circumstances, and possibly if I'd understood
- 9 that if somebody had portrayed to me that a child
- 10 had been admitted and then died, but hadn't gone
- 11 on to say that there were thought to have been
- 12 any contributing factors to that, then I would
- 13 probably have just accepted that and left it.
- 14 Q. You might have gone back to the ward and found
- 15 out a child had died and maybe taken a nurse
- 16 aside and just asked what happened in that case?
- 17 A. Yes, you would hope or you would expect people to
- 18 give you some sort of feedback, and also having a
- 19 child die is a traumatic event for the people
- 20 caring for them and so you would want to pick up
- 21 on that and what the impact on people had been of
- 22 having had a child die.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Can I ask you, that's what the ward
- 24 sister would do with the staff nurses?
- 25 A. Yes.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: Would you expect the ward sister to
- 2 make any inquiries of the doctors?
- 3 A. At the time?
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 5 A. No.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: No. Okay.
- 7 MR REID: Mr Chairman, I have nothing further for Mrs
- 8 Ramsay at present. Perhaps if we take a small --
- 9 MR QUINN: This may short circuit events rather than
- 10 canvass questions. There is just one issue that
- 11 I wanted to raise. If we could have up document
- 12 231-002-032 which is page 31 of Mrs Ramsay's
- 13 report. I just want to read out for the record
- 14 the penultimate paragraph on that page reads:
- 15 "Nurses should have ensured the parents
- 16 understood that the diagnosis, its implications
- 17 and treatment needed. They should have explained
- 18 the medicines, what they were used for and any
- 19 potential side effects. The parents should have
- 20 been told while the observations were being made
- 21 and given explanations on the ongoing process."
- 22 Could then go up the transcript from 31st
- 23 October, which is Mrs Roberts' evidence, and go
- 24 to page 128 of the transcript of the 31st and
- 25 then look at what Mrs Roberts has said and I

- 1 would like, through yourself, Mr Chairman, if the
- 2 witness could be asked about this so that it's
- 3 rounded up and on the record and I will read out
- 4 what Mrs Roberts' evidence is in relation to her
- 5 leaving at 9.15. She said --
- 6 MR FORTUNE: Can we have the documents up side by
- 7 side, Mr Quinn?
- 8 MR QUINN: Yes, we can do. I am going to put up the
- 9 next page as well, Mr Fortune, which is page 129,
- 10 so if those three pages can be put up together
- 11 and what Mrs Roberts has said is that:
- 12 "Obviously then around 9.15 explaining to the
- 13 boys that we'll have to get home and Claire is
- 14 sleeping; that is her settled. So we get
- 15 ourselves sorted and Alan and the boys go back
- 16 and I go up into the nurses' station. I can just
- 17 visualise popping my head in and saying, 'Nurses,
- 18 that's us away for the evening. Claire seems to
- 19 be settled and sleeping. I still have a picture
- 20 of Claire waking up and jumping out of bed', and
- 21 they just said that, as long as the bed sides are
- 22 up all very quickly, she'll be okay and between
- 23 the general chat, goodnight, a phone call came
- 24 through and I was handed the phone and it was my
- 25 cousin from Scotland who was a nurse herself and

- 1 a mother, but she had heard about Claire through
- 2 my auntie that day. Her mummy lives beside us
- 3 and I again said, 'Och, Claire is fine.
- 4 She's just had an unsettling few days and seems
- 5 to be sleeping and Alan and I and the boys are
- 6 going home'. 'Did the nurses say anything to
- 7 you?' Mrs Roberts, 'Not one thing. Just okay,
- 8 Mrs Roberts or just, okay, see you on the
- 9 morning'".
- 10 In the context of that exchange and what the
- 11 witness has said at page 31, the penultimate
- 12 paragraph, is that enough information to be
- 13 giving when parents are going home? I am asking
- 14 that through the tribunal?
- 15 MR REID: It's page 32, if that can be brought up.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: The discussion we've been having, Mrs
- 17 Ramsay, which has been taken up with you, is what
- 18 the nurses have said before the Roberts left,
- 19 particularly with Mrs Roberts going over
- 20 specifically to say that she was leaving and to
- 21 watch out for the bedside. Do I read the
- 22 highlighted paragraph on the right-hand side of
- 23 the screen as meaning well, although this is all
- 24 very unfortunate really the nurses should have
- 25 done more?

- 1 A. Well, the parents appear to have known very
- 2 little which suggests to me that there wasn't an
- 3 ongoing dialogue, as I've described here, whereby
- 4 nurses were giving them information and checking
- 5 up on their understanding. And it is my view
- 6 that, if you are caring for a patient with the
- 7 parents sitting there, you talk through the
- 8 things that you're doing and why you're doing
- 9 them and ensure they've got the understanding.
- 10 So, I think that that situation wouldn't have
- 11 just happened at 9.00 pm. It would have been an
- 12 ongoing issue throughout the whole of her time
- 13 there. The bit that does occur to me is who were
- 14 the people to whom Mrs Roberts said they were
- 15 going? Were they people who had been looking
- 16 after her during the day who hadn't gone off
- 17 duty, or were they people who had just on duty
- 18 and so might not be fully appreciative of what
- 19 was going on.
- 20 MR QUINN: The evidence on that, sir, would be and I
- 21 may stand contradicted on this, was that we seem
- 22 to have pinned that down to the nursing handover
- 23 when there were perhaps two or maybe three nurses
- 24 at the handover. So you may have had staff from
- 25 -- and the nurses have identified this -- you may

- 1 have one person giving the handover to two other
- 2 nurses coming on seems to be what the consensus
- 3 of opinion was in relation to that, and I'm just
- 4 rather concerned at someone saying, "Och,
- 5 Claire's had a few unsettled days" doesn't really
- 6 translate anything and the nurses should have
- 7 picked up and said to them, "Hold on a minute,
- 8 it's not just a few unsettled days. Here's the
- 9 picture. That's what we're concerned about".
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: It's the nurses who are on, and we know
- 11 from 310-016-001 that the nurses who were on from
- 12 8.00 pm were nurses McCann, Murphy and Maxwell.
- 13 They had come on at 8.00 pm for the nightshift,
- 14 having taken over from nurses Ellison and Taylor
- who were there from 2.00 until 8.00 pm, is that?
- 16 MR REID: Yes, that's correct.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Having in turn taken on, so there's a
- 18 serious of nurses through the day. So if the
- 19 nurses who were on duty at 9.00 pm, when the
- 20 Roberts were leaving, didn't know how serious
- 21 Claire's condition was then they may not have
- 22 been properly informed at an adequate handover at
- 23 8.00 pm?
- 24 A. Yes.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but I mean there's also a general

- 1 point about the extent of which anybody was
- 2 really on top of what Claire's condition was?
- 3 A. Yes.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: We've heard evidence from Professor
- 5 Neville on that over the last few days, yes.
- 6 Okay, look you want to --
- 7 MR REID: Check if there are other questions, Mr
- 8 Chairman.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, I am going to rise in a few
- 10 moments. Mr Reid will check whether there are
- 11 any more questions from the floor to rounded up
- 12 and ask you, but just before I do, can I ask you
- 13 about one thing which has, maybe this would be
- 14 common knowledge to you from your experience over
- 15 many years in nursing, but one of the things
- 16 which has emerged from this hearing is that on
- 17 Monday night into Tuesday and Tuesday night into
- 18 Wednesday in the Children's Hospital in Belfast
- 19 there was a registrar and the senior house
- 20 officer with responsibility for the children who
- 21 were already in the hospital which would be about
- 22 114 or so and responsibility then for patients
- 23 coming into A&E, children coming into A&E to be
- 24 seen. Does that level of medical cover shock you
- 25 or is that just that's what happened in the mid-

- 1 1990s?
- 2 A. Yes, I thought that that seemed to be a low
- 3 level; well, a very low level actually.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: The doctor who told us a day or two
- 5 ago, Dr Stewart, I think said he was overwhelmed
- 6 by the amount of work he had to do through a
- 7 night and he was the SHO on this evening.
- 8 A. Yes, I was surprised when I read that the number
- 9 of patients that he'd had responsibility for,
- 10 because you can sometimes have a situation where
- 11 there's a resident registrar and a junior doctor
- 12 who pick up on things that have happened where
- 13 somebody else isn't available to deal with them,
- 14 but to have somebody having to rush around all
- 15 those patients I thought the number seemed very
- 16 low and I had been trying to think back in my
- 17 days when I was a manager for a similar situation
- 18 and I think there would have been more housemen
- 19 about and possibly one registrar resident
- 20 available and then registrars on call at home.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: We're told now that there are fewer
- 22 patients, but that there are three registrars.
- 23 think it was Dr Bartholome who said that there
- 24 are now three registrars for about 90 children
- 25 overnight and A&E which is clearly much better

- 1 than one registrar and one houseman for
- 2 everybody?
- 3 A. Yes and the other thing that's changed over the
- 4 years is that the role of the night sister has
- 5 changed and so a lot of hospitals now have nurse
- 6 practitioners on at night working in a team with
- 7 a couple of doctors and between them they deal
- 8 with the issues throughout the hospital because
- 9 the nurses would be putting up drips and nurses
- 10 would be making assessments of patients. So
- 11 there has been a general drift towards having
- 12 more people available at night.
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, thank you.
- 14 MR FORTUNE: Before we leave that can be take Mrs
- 15 Ramsay back to 1996, and to a reminder to her
- 16 that this is not just a district general
- 17 hospital, but the regional centre for treatment
- 18 here in the province. Are you saying that you
- 19 would have expected there to have been two
- 20 registrars and two senior house officers? You
- 21 talk about a resident registrar.
- 22 A. What I'm saying is that I think there should have
- 23 been more people onsite because although it
- 24 wasn't a standalone children's hospital, it was a
- 25 hospital within a hospital, but the other people,

- 1 the adult people, wouldn't have come in to
- 2 support the children's service, I wouldn't have
- 3 thought, and it does sound to me as though two, a
- 4 resident registrar and a resident houseman,
- 5 seemed to be a very thin covering of people for
- 6 the number of children that were in that
- 7 hospital; part of the hospital.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: I picked Mrs Ramsay up as saying
- 9 possibly a second registrar, but definitely more
- 10 house officers?
- 11 A. Yes, yes.
- 12 MR FORTUNE: This sounds as though we're about to move
- 13 into governance?
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: It is, but Mrs Ramsay is here and I
- 15 just wanted to get her view on this, but this
- 16 will certainly go into governance. Mr McAlinden?
- 17 MR MCALINDEN: Mr Chairman, just in relation to the
- 18 number of SHOs present in the hospital, I think
- 19 we may have lost sight of the fact that there was
- 20 a surgical SHO as well as a medical SHO in the
- 21 children's hospital and there also was an SHO
- 22 assigned to the Accident and Emergency
- 23 Department.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: Are you saying three SHOs?
- 25 MR MCALINDEN: Yes, there definitely was a surgical

- 1 SHO and a medical SHO and an A&E SHO.
- 2 MR REID: Can I ask Mr McAlinden whether the surgical
- 3 SHO was present after 10.00 pm because according
- 4 to the rota that we have of the night it seems
- 5 there was a medical SHO between 5.00 and 10.00,
- 6 surgical SHO between 5.00 and 10.00 and then what
- 7 was deemed to be the overnight SHO and that was
- 8 Dr Stewart. From that rota it only seems that
- 9 the surgical SHO clocked off at 10.00 pm?
- 10 MR MCALINDEN: My recollection of Dr Stewart's
- 11 evidence is that he would not have been dealing
- 12 with surgical patients. That he would have been
- 13 dealing solely with medical patients and I will
- 14 take specific instructions, but my impression is
- 15 that there was a surgical SHO, a medical SHO and
- 16 one present in the Accident and Emergency
- 17 Department.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay, well, maybe we'll definitely pick
- 19 it up at governance.
- 20 MR FORTUNE: It may also, sir, have been this
- 21 situation; registrar, second term SHO and first
- 22 term SHO. Does that make a different if that was
- 23 the case?
- 24 A. I really don't think that I --
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, it's an extra body at least, yes.

- 1 MR FORTUNE: It is an extra body, but of course you've
- 2 got to bear in mind the relative experience or
- 3 inexperience of a first term SHO.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, okay, are there more questions for
- 5 anyone to pick up or can we let Mrs Ramsay go?
- 6 MR REID: Mr Chairman, I do believe Ms Anyadike-Danes
- 7 is behind the scenes and may have a question or
- 8 two for Mrs Ramsay, so I would just like to check
- 9 with her --
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: We will come back in five minutes and
- 11 we'll get lunch at about 1.15 pm. Thank you.
- 12 (1.04 pm)
- 13 (A short break)
- 14 (1.08 pm)
- 15 [inaudible: no microphone]
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: Right. Mrs Ramsay, now that your
- 17 evidence has finished, thank you very much for
- 18 your time and you're free to leave.
- 19 A. Thank you. Thank you.
- 20 (The witness withdrew)
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: We'll start at 2.10 pm, okay?
- 22 DAVID REID: Thank you, Mr Chairman.
- 23 (1.08 pm)
- 24 (The short adjournment)
- 25 (2.03 pm)

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: Ms Danes.
- 2 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you very much. I wonder if
- 3 I could call Dr Aronson, please.
- 4 DR JEFFREY ARONSON (called)
- 5 Questions from MS ANYADIKE-DANES
- 6 THE WITNESS: I am Jeff Aronson.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: Have a seat, please, Doctor. Thank
- 8 you.
- 9 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you very much indeed. Dr
- 10 Aronson, can I ask you, do you have your
- 11 curriculum vitae there?
- 12 MR ARONSON: Not in front of me.
- 13 Q. I think we'll get you a copy then. I wonder, Mr
- 14 Chairman, if I could confirm whether everybody
- 15 else has a copy of Professor Aronson's curriculum
- 16 vitae? Thank you.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Everybody but the author.
- 18 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 19 A. It is imprinted on my mind. Okay.
- 20 Q. Here it comes now.
- 21 A. Thank you. Very useful, thank you very much.
- 22 Q. Before we turn to that, Dr Aronson, you have
- 23 provided one report for the inquiry, is that
- 24 correct?
- 25 A. That's right.

- 1 Q. That report starts at reference 237002001 -- not
- 2 to be pulled up, but that's its reference -- and
- 3 you provided a number of publications with it.
- 4 It's dated June and July of this year, is that
- 5 correct?
- 6 A. That is correct.
- 7 Q. Do you adopt that report, subject to anything
- 8 that you may say in oral hearing? Do you adopt
- 9 that report as your evidence?
- 10 A. I do.
- 11 Q. Thank you. Then I wonder if we could turn to
- 12 your curriculum vitae and we can see at --
- 13 perhaps we might pull this up -- 311035002,
- 14 that's the first page of it, and your current
- 15 appointment is as a reader in clinical
- 16 pharmacology.
- 17 A. Correct.
- 18 Q. That is at Oxford University, and you are also an
- 19 honorary consultant in clinical pharmacology and
- 20 an honorary consultant physician at the Oxford
- 21 University Hospital. Could you, just for the
- 22 laypeople, explain briefly the discipline of
- 23 clinical pharmacology?
- 24 A. It's a discipline that bridges between basic
- 25 pharmacology, which is the study of how drugs

- 1 work, what they do, often in cells or whole
- 2 animals on the one hand, and the actions and uses
- 3 of drugs in people on the other, encompassing
- 4 such matters as how the drug works; what
- 5 indications to use it for; how to determine doses
- 6 and dosage regimens; how to administer it, in
- 7 what forms and over what periods of time; what
- 8 adverse effects and reactions may occur; what
- 9 interactions with other drugs and extending also
- 10 to policy of use, drug regulation, cost-
- 11 effectiveness, advice and indeed anything to do
- 12 with medications.
- 13 Q. Thank you very much. When you say that you are
- 14 also an honorary consultant, does that mean you
- 15 have any clinical work at all, you attend the
- 16 ward?
- 17 A. Yes, yes. I have been a consultant physician now
- 18 for the last 30 years or so, specialising -- if
- 19 it is a specialty -- in what is called general
- 20 internal medicine, in addition to my more focused
- 21 speciality of clinical pharmacology.
- 22 General internal medicine involves the
- 23 management of patients who present to hospital
- 24 with a wide range of medical conditions, indeed
- 25 virtually anything that does not have surgical

- 1 intervention indicated, so cardiovascular
- 2 disease, such as heart attacks, cardiac
- 3 arrhythmias, respiratory disease such as
- 4 pneumonias and bronchitis, nervous system
- 5 disorders such as strokes, epilepsy, migraine --
- 6 the whole range -- gastrointestinal disorders
- 7 such as bleeding from the gut, inflammatory bowel
- 8 disease, the whole -- a very wide range of
- 9 general medical conditions, and I deal with them
- 10 in one of three ways. One is either to deal with
- 11 them myself if the case is sufficiently simple
- 12 for a general physician to handle or I deal with
- 13 it in collaboration with the specialist
- 14 consultant, whom I may -- whose advice I may ask,
- or in the third case, I may hand over the care
- 16 completely to a specialist. There is a wide
- 17 range of problems to deal with.
- 18 Q. But in the light of your work as a general
- 19 physician in terms of internal medicine, are you
- 20 therefore also looking at the prescription
- 21 calculation and administration of drugs in
- 22 relation to some of those conditions?
- 23 A. Indeed. That is my main interest, if you like,
- 24 in the conditions. Although I am responsible for
- 25 taking care of a patient from history-taking,

- 1 examination, investigation, diagnosis and
- 2 management, my main specialty is in -- at the
- 3 management end and the monitoring end of therapy
- 4 rather than in the preliminary phases of the
- 5 whole management process.
- 6 Q. I understand. If we just go over that page to
- 7 003, it would seem that you first became a
- 8 consultant in 1980, would that be right, or
- 9 thereabouts?
- 10 A. That's right, yes.
- 11 Q. If we stay with that page and look at your
- 12 research interests and publications, we see that
- 13 you are a guest editor or were a guest editor of
- 14 the British Medical Journal, the issue on
- 15 Balancing Benefits and Harms in Healthcare, and
- 16 also the British Journal of Clinical
- 17 Pharmacology, and in relation to that in the
- 18 December 2004 Clinical Pharmacology: Past,
- 19 Present and Future, and that was dated 2006.
- 20 Then it goes on to deal with adverse drug
- 21 reactions, and that was February 2007, and
- 22 medication errors in June 2009. Before I go to
- 23 where you are editor-in-chief in relation to
- 24 other publications, because of when you became a
- 25 consultant, how familiar would you be with the

- 1 practices in 1996?
- 2 A. Well, I was a consultant from 1980 and in the
- 3 1990s -- 1996 specifically -- I was a busy ontake
- 4 physician on call, in those days one month in
- 5 three, taking sick patients, anything from 20 to
- 6 40 patients at a take 6 or 8 times a month. So
- 7 that would have been my experience at that time.
- 8 Q. Then if we go on down that list, where we see
- 9 that you are the co-editor-in-chief on the
- 10 Meyler's Side Effects of Drugs, and that is the
- 11 14th edition of that, and then you go on to be
- 12 the editor of the Side Effects of Drugs: the
- 13 International Encyclopaedia of Adverse Drug
- 14 Reactions and Interactions. Is that a particular
- 15 interest of yours?
- 16 A. It is. Well, in fact, at the moment we are
- 17 heavily involved in preparing the 16th edition,
- 18 which involves taking the 6-volume 15th edition
- 19 and adding material that has accrued in the
- 20 annual volumes, which are published every year
- 21 over the last ... last 5 years, so there is an
- 22 extra 5 volumes' worth, 5 years' worth of
- 23 material to be incorporated into the 15th
- 24 edition, and that's a major task in which we're
- 25 involved at the moment.

- 1 Q. Then to refer back to the point that you were
- 2 making about 1996, if we go over the page again,
- 3 we see that you were involved in the Adverse Drug
- 4 Reactions Bulletin for 1996, and that seems to be
- 5 continuing, so that's to present day?
- 6 A. Yes. Yes, in fact, I was having dinner with the
- 7 editor of the Adverse Drug Reactions Bulletin
- 8 only last week and talking about planning future
- 9 editions.
- 10 Q. Then in terms of your membership of committees
- 11 and learned societies, you are President Emeritus
- 12 of the British Pharmacological Society, and
- 13 that's 2010, and is that a position you hold
- 14 currently?
- 15 A. Yes. Well, it merely means that I was president,
- 16 so it's --
- 17 Q. You hold on as an honorary position, if I can put
- 18 it that way?
- 19 A. Yes.
- 20 Q. Yes, and then you're a member of the Advisory
- 21 Board of the British National Formulary --
- 22 A. Yeah.
- 23 Q. -- and that's something you're currently a member
- 24 of?
- 25 A. Yes. I was for some time a member of the Joint

- 1 Formulary Committees of both the British National
- 2 Formulary and the British National Formulary for
- 3 Children, and when I stepped down from those
- 4 committees, I was appointed a member of the
- 5 Advisory Board for the BN -- the British National
- 6 Formularies.
- 7 Q. You also were until, I think it is, 2010 a member
- 8 of the Advisory Board of the National Patient
- 9 Safety Agency.
- 10 A. That's right.
- 11 Q. With specific reference to medications.
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 Q. Then in terms of the university, you're the
- 14 Associate Member of the Department of
- 15 Pharmacology, and I think that's a position you
- 16 still hold.
- 17 A. Yes.
- 18 Q. You have been Head of Department of Clinical
- 19 Pharmacology?
- 20 A. Correct.
- 21 Q. Then just finally to deal with your membership of
- 22 academic societies, that's to be found at 005.
- 23 You're a Fellow of the British Pharmacological
- 24 Society 2004, and then as you have said before,
- 25 you have been President and now currently

- 1 President Emeritus, and a Fellow of the Royal
- 2 College of Physicians, and you still are.
- 3 A. Yes.
- 4 Q. Then just finally in terms of teaching, which we
- 5 find at 006, you've engaged in undergraduate and
- 6 post-graduate teaching activities and that
- 7 includes lectures on drug therapy to clinical
- 8 students and also bedside and seminar-teaching on
- 9 drug therapy and clinical medicine to clinical
- 10 students and so forth, and also at weekly grand
- 11 rounds, and it says, "student grand rounds".
- 12 What are student grand rounds?
- 13 A. Well, the grand round is a meeting at which all
- 14 the physicians in the hospital meet to discuss
- 15 cases of interest to help diagnose, to learn, an
- 16 educative meeting, and it's held once a week.
- 17 Usually two or three cases are presented. A few
- 18 years ago, the Medical School decided to
- 19 institute a similar meeting for the students,
- 20 which is run in exactly the same way, but by the
- 21 students, and so instead of all the physicians
- 22 meeting, all the students meet, they present
- 23 cases and discuss them.
- 24 And each time a grand round is held, a senior
- 25 member of the hospital is invited to come along

- 1 to comment on the case, and I found that actually
- 2 a very useful way of teaching clinical
- 3 pharmacology and therapeutics to the students, to
- 4 go along to their grand round and comment,
- 5 because every case, whatever it is, in whatever
- 6 specialty, medicines are almost always involved,
- 7 and so this was a good opportunity for teaching.
- 8 And the student grand rounds actually are of a
- 9 very high standard. The students take great care
- 10 and they spend a lot of time preparing their case
- 11 presentations, and they are very educative for
- 12 seniors as well as the students.
- 13 Q. And to bring a multi-disciplinary approach to
- 14 particular cases?
- 15 A. Indeed.
- 16 Q. Is this something that's unique to your
- 17 university, or are you aware of it happening at
- 18 other universities?
- 19 A. I don't know. Students have meetings and
- 20 educative meetings everywhere. I don't know if
- 21 the grand round idea has been taken up elsewhere.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: Just before you move on, when did the
- 23 weekly grand rounds start in terms of how many
- 24 years ago?
- 25 A. Sorry?

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: For how many years have you been doing
- 2 weekly grand rounds?
- 3 A. Oh, since I came to Oxford, 1973.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 5 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: It says on the final page of your
- 6 CV, before it goes into your publications list,
- 7 that your current research interests are:
- 8 "Methods of classifying, detecting and
- 9 reporting adverse drug reactions, including
- 10 systematic reviews, meta-analysis and the use of
- 11 anecdotal reports in collaboration with others."
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 Q. So that's what you're engaged in at the moment?
- 14 A. That's what my main research is currently. I do
- 15 take part in other activities. We've just
- 16 published, for example, the results of a large
- 17 clinical trial in Sri Lanka on the prevention of
- 18 adverse reactions to anti-snake venom, for
- 19 example, with my colleagues there. And I am also
- 20 currently working with other members of my
- 21 department in Oxford, which is the Department of
- 22 Primary Care Health Sciences, on outcomes of
- 23 treating diabetes, for example. So there are
- 24 other interests, but my main research focus is on
- 25 adverse drug reactions.

- 1 Q. Thank you. I wonder if we can now move to this
- 2 case specifically, and if you can help us at the
- 3 outset with some of the drug administration
- 4 terminology, if I can put it that way, and the
- 5 first is as we look through the clinical notes
- 6 and also the drug prescriptions, we see, for
- 7 example, references to a "stat dose". What is a
- 8 stat dose?
- 9 A. "Stat" is a term that doctors use, short for the
- 10 Latin word "statim" which means "immediately".
- 11 Q. Immediately?
- 12 A. Immediately, forthwith. If I say, "Give this
- 13 drug stat" -- it's not a term I often use, but it
- 14 is used -- then I mean, "Give it now. Don't hang
- 15 about, give it straight away or as soon as you
- 16 can".
- 17 Q. Perhaps if we use an example, and we can see what
- 18 "forthwith" might mean in those circumstances.
- 19 The direction in the clinical notes and records
- 20 in relation to phenytoin, and one finds that from
- 21 Dr Webb at 090, 022, 054 -- this is just for the
- 22 sake of making sure we have understood what you
- 23 said -- and if you see his suggestions, the first
- 24 of those is starting, "IV phenytoin 18 milligrams
- 25 per kilo stat" and then it's going to be followed

- 1 by a subsequent infusion, but if we just leave
- 2 with that. So that is a direction that he makes,
- 3 having seen Claire. It's not entirely clear when
- 4 he is writing that. It's recorded at 1400 --
- 5 well, it is known to be 2.00 pm on the Tuesday,
- 6 but presumably he would have spent some time
- 7 actually examining the child, so we're not quite
- 8 sure what the 2.00 pm relates to. So we have
- 9 that piece of information.
- 10 We also know that it was administered at
- 11 14.45, so depending on what the 1400 hours
- 12 relates to, there's a period of something up to
- 13 45 minutes before it's actually administered.
- 14 Does stat encompass that?
- 15 A. Yes, I would that is "stat-ish". How soon is
- 16 soon?
- 17 Q. Yes.
- 18 A. Forty-five minutes, perhaps a little on the long
- 19 side, but not unreasonable. It takes time for
- 20 communication of instructions, for drugs to be
- 21 found, for solutions to be made up, for
- 22 arrangements to be made to deliver the dose and
- 23 so on. Yes, that's not unreasonable.
- Q. And if the 2 o'clock had been when he actually
- 25 came to see the child, then there'll be a period

- 1 of time when he was examining the child and so on
- 2 before that direction or suggestion would have
- 3 gone out?
- 4 A. Indeed.
- 5 Q. So that's that. What about a "loading dose"?
- 6 What is that?
- 7 A. If you give a dose of a drug at regular
- 8 intervals, it takes time for the drug to build up
- 9 in the body to a therapeutic amount. If you
- 10 remember the old mathematical problems --
- 11 Q. Sorry, by "therapeutic amount", do you mean an
- 12 amount to be effective?
- 13 A. An amount to be beneficially effective.
- 14 Q. Yes.
- 15 A. If you remember the old mathematical problems
- 16 that many of us were given at school, you turn on
- 17 the tap in a bath and the tap runs at 1 litre per
- 18 minute and the drain drains the bath at 100
- 19 millilitres per minute. How long does it take
- 20 for the bath to fill? Well, if the bath is a
- 21 litre big, then it is going to take at least ten
- 22 minutes, because you're running it at 100
- 23 millilitres per minute, but you're also losing
- 24 fluid at the same time, so it's going to take
- 25 longer. In other words, it's going to take time

- 1 before the amount of water in the bath actually
- 2 reaches the top and starts to overflow.
- 3 I don't want to wait for that. I want a bath
- 4 stat, so I pour a litre of fluid straight into
- 5 the bath. That's the loading dose. It fills the
- 6 bath up immediately. Now, I have left the drain
- 7 open because I don't have a plug, so I will lose
- 8 fluid all the time, so I leave the tap on just to
- 9 top it up. That's the maintenance dose. So the
- 10 loading dose is filling up the system, the
- 11 maintenance dose is replacing losses as they
- 12 occur. I can do that continuously by leaving the
- 13 tap turned on or I can do it intermittently by
- 14 turning the tap on from time to time. Either
- 15 way, it's a maintenance dose, maintaining the
- 16 amount of drug, within limits.
- 17 Q. Yes. If you do it intermittently, depending on
- 18 how long it takes for the effectiveness of the
- 19 drug in the system to diminish, you can work out
- 20 whether you will have a fluctuating level --
- 21 A. Indeed.
- 22 Q. -- or whether you will have a continuous
- 23 effective amount.
- 24 A. That's correct, and the longer you leave between
- 25 maintenance doses, the more fluctuation there is

- 1 in the amount in the body. As you can see, you
- 2 will lose more of the fluid from the bath the
- 3 longer you wait, and you'll have to put more in.
- 4 So the ideal circumstance to maintain a constant
- 5 amount of water in the bath is to give a constant
- 6 infusion, leave the tap running. If the drug --
- 7 if the drain is very slowly draining, just a
- 8 trickle, then you can afford to wait and top it
- 9 up every so often.
- 10 So, for example, we're going to talk about
- 11 phenytoin, no doubt, phenytoin -- the drain for
- 12 phenytoin is very, very small. It's a trickle,
- 13 it disappears very slowly, so you only have to
- 14 put some in every so often. You don't have to
- 15 keep it infusing every minute or every hour. You
- 16 can wait 12 or 24 hours, but for a drug like
- 17 midazolam, the drain is quite big and it drains
- 18 quite quickly. It's much better to give a
- 19 continuous infusion to maintain the amount of
- 20 drug in the system, and that's exactly what you
- 21 see in the dosage regimens.
- Q. And a "bolus", what is that?
- 23 A. Bolus, right. Well, bolus is the Latin word for
- 24 a ball and, for example, when you swallow, when
- 25 you're chewing your food, you form a ball of food

- 1 and it's called a bolus, and you swallow that
- 2 bolus. Over the back of the tongue, there is a
- 3 ball of food going down your gullet. An
- 4 embolism, pulmonary embolism, is a ball of clot
- 5 being flung into a pulmonary artery and blocking
- 6 it. So a bolus is a ball.
- 7 If I throw you a ball, I can throw it hard and
- 8 fast. If I inject a drug, I can inject hard and
- 9 fast. That's the bolus. It's the amount of drug
- 10 in the syringe that I'm injecting, as if I was
- 11 throwing you a ball. Now, I can throw the ball
- 12 up in the air very high and you might have to
- 13 wait a few seconds before you caught it, but
- 14 still it would happen quite quickly. So I can
- 15 give a bolus dose, zap, instantly, or over a few
- 16 seconds if I lob it in, as it were. That's a
- 17 bolus. It's done pretty much instantly.
- 18 Q. And is that the idea, because you want to have a
- 19 pretty quick reaction to that drug?
- 20 A. No, it's just easy to give it that way.
- 21 Generally there are very few, if any, drugs that
- 22 one wants to put in fast because you need to put
- 23 it in fast. There was one drug some years ago
- 24 for which that was a direction, and it's defunct.
- One doesn't do it for the sake of speed, one does

- 1 it because it doesn't matter and get it in as
- 2 quickly as you like.
- 3 Q. Oh, I see. So it would be the other way round,
- 4 you'd have a contraindication to giving a drug
- 5 quickly?
- 6 A. That's right, so giving a drug slowly is because
- 7 you don't want to give it quickly. You don't
- 8 give it quickly because you don't want to give it
- 9 slowly, it's not that way round. So the
- 10 difficulty is for a drug that would cause adverse
- 11 reactions were you to give it quickly as a bolus
- 12 dose.
- 13 Q. So if you give it slowly, you can see what is
- 14 happening and adjust things if you're getting a
- 15 response that you don't particularly want?
- 16 A. It depends on the time course over which you give
- 17 the drug. Generally speaking, if you don't give
- 18 a bolus, you give it by what one can term loosely
- 19 as infusion, which means giving the drug
- 20 intravenously. We're talking all about
- 21 intravenous administration now, not other routes,
- 22 although you can infuse drugs in other ways, but
- 23 let's just stick to intravenous. By infusion, I
- 24 mean over some period of time. Most people by
- 25 infusion mean that you put it in bottle and let

- 1 the drug drip in but in-between that and a bolus
- 2 you can give a give a drug by syringe but slowly.
- 3 I would call that by slow injection rather than
- 4 infusion, just to distinguish it.
- 5 Q. Or a slow push? We've seen some of that in the
- 6 (overspeaking)
- 7 A. Yes. That's a term that's sometimes used. It
- 8 derives from American habits, slow push, but yes,
- 9 that describes what I am calling a slow injection
- 10 indeed and, of course, it's precisely what you're
- 11 doing. You're on the end of a syringe and you're
- 12 pushing the barrel of the syringe in so it's a
- 13 slow push. Usually you do that because you want
- 14 to avoid an adverse reaction.
- 15 There are some drugs, for example, if given
- 16 too quickly can cause release of histamine into
- 17 the system which causes your blood vessels to
- 18 dilate and your blood pressure to fall, a thing
- 19 called the Red Man Syndrome. You get vassal
- 20 delectation, blood vessels dilating, a lot of
- 21 blood comes to the skin, you turn red and your
- 22 blood pressure falls because the blood isn't
- 23 going elsewhere. You avoid that by giving the
- 24 drug slowly and there are other examples of that.
- 25 Q. Thank you.

- 1 A. But if you want to maintain an effect of a drug,
- 2 as I was describing before, a constant effect,
- 3 then that would be a reason for giving a drug
- 4 over a long period of time not because you're
- 5 worried about avoiding adverse reactions in this
- 6 case but because you want to maintain an action
- 7 for a long period of time and you, therefore,
- 8 give the drug by long infusion, slow infusion,
- 9 which then keeps the amount of drug in the body
- 10 up at a steady value.
- 11 Q. Keeping that amount at an effective level, a
- 12 therapeutic level, I think you said, is that
- 13 connected at all with the notion of a drug's half
- 14 life?
- 15 A. It is. The reason is that if you give a drug by
- 16 continuous infusion without giving a loading dose
- 17 it takes time to reach the steady state -- as I
- 18 described for filling the bath. You can
- 19 appreciate that the time it takes relates
- 20 primarily to the size of the drain. The faster
- 21 the fluid drains the longer it will take you to
- 22 get up to steady state while you're filling the
- 23 bath. So the time it takes during an infusion to
- 24 get to steady state when the amount of drug is
- 25 steady and at therapeutic level depends on the

- 1 half life of the drug. Conventionally, the
- 2 teaching is usually that it takes about four half
- 3 lives to reach a steady state.
- 4 So within one half life you reach half of
- 5 steady state, within two half lives you get
- 6 three-quarters of the way; that is 50 per cent
- 7 plus 25 per cent, a half of the difference. The
- 8 next half life you get another 12.5 per cent of
- 9 another half and so on. So after four half lives
- 10 you're at 93 per cent of the way to the maximum
- 11 and that's good enough. So with a drug that has
- 12 a long half life like phenytoin you want to give
- 13 a big loading dose to get you up to that value
- 14 and then maintain it because if you just give an
- 15 infusion or regular maintenance doses it'll take
- 16 four or five half lives and with a drug like
- 17 phenytoin that could be many days.
- 18 Q. In terms of the effects of combinations of drugs
- 19 is that is also influenced by whether those drugs
- 20 are at their therapeutic level, if I can put it
- 21 that way, or their half life?
- 22 A. Perhaps just to finish the story about half life
- 23 before I answer your question -- when you stop
- 24 giving a drug it disappears with a half life and
- 25 half of the drug in the body will disappear in

- 1 one half life so that half of the effect that you
- 2 have will disappear. It's not quite as simple as
- 3 that because the effect, concentration effect
- 4 relationship, is in fact logarithmic rather than
- 5 linear but you can see that if you're losing a
- 6 drug quickly you will lose its effect quickly.
- 7 If you're losing it slowly you will lose the
- 8 effect slowly. That's the basic principle. How
- 9 much of the actual effect you lose is more
- 10 difficult to calculate because of the logarithmic
- 11 nature of the effect concentration relationship
- 12 but the basic principle is that the half life
- 13 determines how soon the effect dissipates.
- 14 Q. Before I ask you then to answer the combination
- 15 question, if we stick with single drugs, apart
- 16 from just the chemical compounds of the drug and
- 17 the known research about what its therapeutic
- 18 levels are and what its half life is and so
- 19 forth, are there individual things in the
- 20 patients that affect the length of time the drug
- 21 remains at a therapeutic level?
- 22 A. Yes. Firstly, there is natural inter-individual
- 23 variation. We're all different. We're different
- 24 sizes, different weights, different ethnic
- 25 origins, different sexes; all of these things

- 1 cause variability in the individual response to a
- 2 single dose. If I gave everybody in this room
- 3 the same dose of drug and measure the plasma
- 4 concentration at the same time after that dose
- 5 they will be widely different. So there is
- 6 individual variation just because of the way we
- 7 are different from each other naturally. In
- 8 addition to that people who have impaired kidney
- 9 function or who have impaired liver function may
- 10 not clear the drug as quickly as somebody else.
- 11 So the size of the drain in these cases -- if
- 12 you have kidney failure, your drain is smaller,
- 13 you don't get rid of the drug as quickly as you
- 14 should and the drug will take longer to build up
- 15 and longer to disappear. Similarly for drugs
- 16 that are cleared by the liver, which many drugs
- 17 are -- impaired liver function. There are many
- 18 other susceptibility factors which alter people's
- 19 responses to drugs, how many receptors you have
- 20 for a particular drug. The receptor is a protein
- 21 usually in the tissue to which the drug binds and
- 22 on which it acts to produce its effect or it
- 23 might be an enzyme or a transport protein or some
- 24 mechanism, some intrinsic moyati in the body
- 25 which the drug targets for its mode of action.

- 1 So everybody may have different numbers of
- 2 receptors, different amounts of enzyme, genetic
- 3 differences play a part. Many different factors
- 4 lead to huge variability in the population.
- 5 Q. But what you're trying to do, I presume, is to
- 6 tailor the drug and its effects, therapeutic
- 7 effects, to the individual patient that you're
- 8 treating?
- 9 A. Ideally.
- 10 Q. So if that's what you're trying to do and there
- 11 can be these variations and you really can only
- 12 know what's going on, I presume, by testing. The
- 13 way that you said if you were to test us all,
- 14 even having given us the same drug, we would have
- 15 different concentrations of that drug if you were
- 16 to test our blood.
- 17 How important is it when you are embarking on
- 18 quite an extensive drug therapy to be testing the
- 19 child or the patient, as it may be, to see
- 20 exactly what is happening?
- 21 A. People are nowadays calling this personalised
- 22 medicine. I prefer to think of it as
- 23 individualising therapy. For every patient one
- 24 tries to choose a dose and a dosage regimen, in
- other words the size of the dose, 100 milligrams,

- 1 say, and the frequency with which it's
- 2 administered, the route of administration, the
- 3 duration of therapy, the formulation that you
- 4 choose. One tries to choose these in order to
- 5 maximise the benefit to the patient and minimise
- 6 the harm or risk of harm.
- 7 This individualisation is actually quite
- 8 difficult because in many cases there are not
- 9 good ways of determining how effective a drug has
- 10 been. Ideally you want to measure the outcome of
- 11 interest. If you have asthma then you might
- 12 count up the number of attacks of asthma you have
- in a month or a year before and after the
- 14 treatment and see if it's altered. If you have
- 15 epilepsy you might count up the number of
- 16 seizures you have. You might even go so far as
- 17 to note the intensity of the seizure, did it last
- 18 five minutes, one minute, did it happen at night,
- 19 during the day, and so on. One might try to make
- 20 an assessment of the outcome of interest.
- 21 If on the other hand you have depression it's
- 22 very difficult to judge how well a drug has
- 23 worked. We all feel depressed from time to time.
- 24 How do you judge that you're better or worse? It
- 25 can be done but it's much more subjective and

- 1 difficult. So if you have objective measures
- 2 that you can record then that's the ideal way of
- 3 monitoring therapy.
- 4 Q. For the kind of drug therapy that was being
- 5 administered to Claire, what are the objective
- 6 measures for how effective that is being for her
- 7 condition?
- 8 A. Let's assume, just for the sake of discussion,
- 9 that she did indeed have non-convulsive status
- 10 epilepticus then it is very difficult because
- 11 measuring brain function in those circumstances
- 12 is hard. We're laying aside the question of
- 13 whether she had encephalitis which might have
- 14 altered her brain function or some other
- 15 condition that we don't understand. Let us just
- 16 assume that she has status epilepticus and we
- 17 want to monitor it. If she's having fits we can
- 18 see her fits and if she's not fitting then we can
- 19 count that as a success but this is a condition,
- 20 uncommon, non-fitting status, how do you measure
- 21 it? Well, I think the best way of doing that is
- 22 an electroencephalogram, an EEG, and you should
- 23 do it before treatment and then sometime after
- 24 treatment to see whether it has been modified by
- 25 the treatment. So that is a way of measuring the

- 1 outcome of interest. It's difficult. It's not
- 2 ideal because EEG, electroencephalography is not
- 3 a straightforward process, it's subject to a lot
- 4 of variability and interpretative difficulty but
- 5 experts in it are very good at that kind of thing
- 6 and they could, if it were in place, use that as
- 7 a test of judgment whether the drug had had an
- 8 effect.
- 9 Q. That would be so, would it not, even if you had a
- 10 combination of drugs which might otherwise be
- 11 rather difficult to work out the interactions
- 12 between them but if you're looking at an EEG,
- 13 which is monitoring the activity in the brain,
- 14 irrespective of that combination you would,
- 15 presumably, be able to see whether it was having
- 16 any marked effect on that?
- 17 A. If the end point of using all of these drugs was
- 18 a common end point then, yes, they would add up
- 19 and you could get an overall measure of the
- 20 effect of a combination of drugs such as was used
- 21 in this case.
- 22 Q. I understand.
- 23 A. Now if you don't have such an end point the next
- 24 thing to do is to use what I would call a
- 25 pharmacodynamic end point rather than a

- 1 therapeutic end point. So measuring the number
- 2 of fits is a therapeutic end point. That's what
- 3 the patient is interested in; am I going to have
- 4 a fit and can you stop me from having a fit?
- 5 That's the therapeutic end point.
- 6 If you can't measure the therapeutic end point
- 7 then you want to measure, if you can, some
- 8 pharmacological end point that relates to the
- 9 therapeutic end point. If the drug works, for
- 10 example, by altering sodium in the body, sodium
- 11 transport across cells or potassium or whatever,
- 12 you might want to measure, if you could, the
- 13 activity of that system. That's not for fits but
- 14 it's a measure of what the drug is acting on. In
- 15 this case you can't do that, there are no tests
- of pharmacodynamic measurement.
- 17 To give you an example in diabetes; people
- 18 with diabetes measure their blood sugar. That's
- 19 not the therapeutic end point, people think it
- 20 is, but it's not. The therapeutic end point of
- 21 treating diabetes is to reduce the risk of damage
- 22 to the eyes, damage to the kidneys, that's the
- 23 long term outcome. We believe nowadays, although
- 24 the data are difficult to interpret, that
- 25 controlling the blood sugar leads to such an end

- 1 point but controlling the blood sugar from day to
- 2 day is a pharmacodynamic measure of the action of
- 3 insulin or other drugs. That's an example of a
- 4 pharmacodynamic end point which is related to the
- 5 end point of interest, prevention of the
- 6 complications of diabetes but is not the true end
- 7 point itself; it's a means to an end. But in
- 8 these cases you don't have such a measure.
- 9 Q. That's what I was going to ask you. But for
- 10 these particular drugs that were being
- 11 administered there isn't a way of looking at the
- 12 means to the end so does that mean that the only
- 13 reliable way of seeing how effective they were
- 14 was to have carried out an EEG?
- 15 A. I think so. There are other, however, indirect
- 16 ways of doing this which are commonly used. So
- if you can't measure the therapeutic end point
- 18 and you can't measure the pharmacodynamic end
- 19 point the next best thing is to measure how much
- 20 drug is there because at least --
- 21 Q. In the system?
- 22 A. In the system.
- 23 Q. How do you do that?
- 24 A. So at least you can say, "At least I know now
- 25 that there's a certain amount there and I can

- 1 predict from what I know about the drug that that
- 2 amount should be associated with the likelihood
- 3 of a therapeutic benefit". Ideally, again, you
- 4 would want to measure the concentration at the
- 5 site of action, which is the brain in this case,
- 6 but you can't do that so the next best thing is
- 7 to measure the amount of drug in the blood, the
- 8 plasma or serum concentration.
- 9 Q. Is this the sort of reason why, for example, they
- 10 wanted to know what the phenytoin levels were?
- 11 A. That's correct.
- 12 This is not available for all drugs and in the
- 13 case of the drugs that Claire was given the only
- 14 one for which it is regularly available is
- 15 phenytoin but it is the most important one for
- 16 which that measurement should be made and it is
- 17 despite the fact that it is at a distance from
- 18 the therapeutic effect. The amount of drug in
- 19 the blood and the actual outcome in the brain are
- 20 quite a long way away from each other despite
- 21 that actually measuring the plasma concentration,
- 22 or the serum concentration, is quite a good
- 23 measure of therapeutic outcome and is an even
- 24 better measure of the risk of toxicity or adverse
- 25 effects. There's a very good correlation between

- 1 high plasma phenytoin concentrations and specific
- 2 adverse reactions to the drug. So measuring the
- 3 phenytoin concentration in the blood, whether
- 4 it's plasma or serum, it varies from place to
- 5 place and it doesn't matter, is a useful way of
- 6 monitoring therapy and tailoring dosage
- 7 requirements.
- 8 Q. Thank you. I want to ask you in turn about the
- 9 drugs that were prescribed and administered to
- 10 Claire, particularly the anti-convulsant, so that
- 11 will be the diazepam, the phenytoin, the
- 12 midazolam and the sodium valproate, being the
- 13 four main ones. We have prepared a schedule to
- 14 look at the overlapping medication timeline,
- 15 which may be of assistance, to look and see what
- 16 was happening, and that is 310-020-001. I
- 17 understand that a version of this went up
- 18 yesterday, which was my error, because that was a
- 19 draft and this is actually the correct version.
- 20 I think it has now been substituted in the
- 21 system. The reason for that is because we didn't
- 22 have the information on the half life which is
- 23 the very characteristic of these drugs that you
- 24 have been describing and their significance.
- Just if I quickly show what's on this, I mean

- 1 it's a timeline, so you can see the time across
- 2 the top and those balls, coloured balls, they're
- 3 the bolus and underneath them is the time when
- 4 that was administered. Then the dotted lines are
- 5 the half lives and if you've got a solid line
- 6 that's an infusion. Then just to try and keep
- 7 this correlated with what was happening -- those
- 8 red vertical lines they indicate the seizure or
- 9 those episodes that are recorded on the record of
- 10 "attacks observed". Then you have, towards the
- 11 right-hand side, two vertical lines which show
- 12 when the brain stem death tests were carried at
- 13 6.00 am and 6.25 pm. So that's what this is
- 14 showing.
- 15 But the purpose is, when I ask you about what
- 16 might be the interactions of this, so that you
- 17 can help guide us as to what's in the system, if
- 18 I can put it that way, and to look and see to
- 19 what extent that fits or doesn't with any other
- 20 presentation of Claire, predominantly these
- 21 episodes.
- 22 So I wonder if we could start first with
- 23 diazepam and you can see that that was
- 24 administered at 12.15 rectally. It was a dose of
- 25 5 milligrams and I think in your report you say

- 1 the onset of action is 10 to 30 minutes, and I
- 2 think that's at 237-002-008 -- you don't have to
- 3 pull it up -- but that's where I think you say
- 4 that. What exactly does that term mean "the
- 5 onset of action"?
- 6 A. The diazepam has been given rectally so it's been
- 7 inserted through the anus into the rectum in a
- 8 solution which is then absorbed through the
- 9 rectal wall into the rectal veins which drain
- 10 directly into the systemic circulation. If you
- 11 take a drug orally, swallow it, it goes in, down
- 12 your gullet into the stomach where it stays for a
- 13 variable period of time, 15-30 minutes, an hour,
- 14 2 hours, sometimes longer. It then has to pass
- 15 into the small bowel before it gets absorbed. It
- 16 then passes through the liver which may
- 17 metabolise it. All these things take a long
- 18 time. If you give the drug into the rectum it
- 19 gets rapidly absorbed into the rectal veins and
- 20 straight into the systemic circulation without
- 21 having to go through all that delay. Then it has
- 22 to pass across the blood-brain barrier from the
- 23 blood to the brain, attach itself to receptors
- 24 and have an action. So this takes a bit of time
- 25 but not nearly as long as it would if it was

- 1 being given orally.
- 2 If you give intravenous diazepam you bypass
- 3 the absorptive process altogether and you will
- 4 get a very rapid response, maybe ten minutes. If
- 5 you give it rectally it will probably take a bit
- 6 longer, maybe 20-30 minutes or a bit longer still
- 7 but that's the order of magnitude of the time it
- 8 takes for these processes to occur.
- 9 Q. When you say the "onset of action" do you mean
- 10 the reaching of a therapeutic level?
- 11 A. Not necessarily.
- 12 Q. So it may not yet be at its therapeutic level?
- 13 A. It may not be. It depends on whether the dose is
- 14 right.
- 15 Q. But it would be doing something?
- 16 A. It would be doing something. You don't know
- 17 whether the dose of 5 milligrams is right. A
- 18 dose of 5 milligrams is written in the book.
- 19 This is the BNF from September 1996, so this is
- 20 the relevant document. You'd look it up in the
- 21 book and the book says 5-10 milligrams, let us
- 22 say, well that's the dose that has been
- 23 determined during development of the drug and
- 24 clinical trials and other matters of that sort
- 25 and it's a ballpark figure, huge variability from

- 1 individual to individual. You never know what
- 2 the right dose is but you start in the
- 3 recommended range and you usually start at the
- 4 lower level of the recommended range because you
- 5 don't know what the patient's response will be.
- 6 So you don't know if it's going to have the
- 7 effect you're looking for but you expect it to
- 8 start to have some effect and you should then be
- 9 monitoring that effect, looking to see what
- 10 happens, and as best you can judge what the
- 11 response is if there are ways of doing that and,
- 12 as I said before, that can be very difficult.
- 13 Q. When you say you should be looking to see, who
- 14 are the persons, in your experience, who have
- 15 that responsibility?
- 16 A. For me it's the doctor who gives the drug and I
- 17 say "gives" very loosely. It might be the doctor
- 18 who prescribed the drug or it might be the doctor
- 19 who said, "Let's do this" or who actually writes
- 20 the prescription or the doctor who gives the
- 21 drug. In my view it's the doctor responsible for
- 22 the case who is in charge of looking after the
- 23 patient who should go back and see, "Did this
- 24 drug have an effect?"
- 25 Q. Should it be a doctor who is giving it and

- 1 watching?
- 2 A. If the doctor is the one who has prescribed the
- 3 drug, and that is usually the case, then it
- 4 should be the doctor responsible for prescribing
- 5 it or giving it. If, in the case of a nurse, who
- 6 is a prescriber, then it's the nurse prescriber
- 7 who's responsible in my view although a nurse may
- 8 want to defer to another specialist, a physician,
- 9 who is there, for help with that if she feels
- 10 uncomfortable or unconfident about it. In my
- 11 view the individual who has been responsible for
- 12 prescribing the drug is responsible for making
- 13 sure that the drug has had an effect or what
- 14 effect the drug has had or is responsible for
- 15 delegating that task to somebody in his or her
- 16 team. It might be a junior hospital doctor if
- 17 the consultant has recommended the prescription.
- 18 Q. It would seem, in this case, that it was actually
- 19 given by a nurse and we can see that and the
- 20 prescription sheet, 090-026-075.
- 21 A. All right, but it was prescribed by a doctor.
- 22 Q. It would seem so. It's right down at the bottom
- 23 -- perhaps just blow that up a little bit, see
- 24 just across there. Yes, and it does appear to
- 25 have been prescribed by a doctor but nonetheless

- 1 given by a nurse.
- 2 A. All right. I would expect the doctor to be
- 3 interested in whether that medication had worked
- 4 or not and to what extent, if it was possible to
- 5 determine, and in this case I think it's actually
- 6 very difficult to determine.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: Although there is a note but it comes
- 8 along to say that it is noted that -- well,
- 9 there's some dispute about this but it is noted
- 10 that there was some improvement.
- 11 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes, that's in the medical notes
- 12 and records. It's at 090-022-053. This is Dr
- 13 Webb's note and there's a note:
- 14 "Appeared to improve following rectal diazepam
- 15 at 5 milligrams at 12.30 pm."
- 16 So somebody had observed and that's recorded.
- 17 A. Yes, it doesn't say in what way the improvement
- 18 occurred or why he thought that that was so.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: What would be the detectable sign of
- 20 improvement?
- 21 A. In this case I think it's rather difficult to
- 22 know. We don't know what the diagnosis was.
- 23 We're assuming, for the purposes of discussion,
- 24 that it was indeed non-convulsive status
- 25 epilepticus but we have no evidence of that. We

- 1 have no way of knowing whether that condition
- 2 changed in any way from the point of view of the
- 3 activity of the brain because something is
- 4 happening in the brain that is not being
- 5 transmitted to the body.
- 6 Normally what happens in epilepsy is there is
- 7 an abnormal electrical storm in a part of the
- 8 brain. It starts in one area, a little storm of
- 9 electricity, and then in the most common form of
- 10 epilepsy -- that I see at any rate, called
- 11 tonic-clonic seizures, it becomes generalised.
- 12 It spreads to the rest of the brain; the whole
- 13 storm affects the brain. This is translated into
- 14 jerking of the arms and legs, clenching of the
- 15 teeth, biting of the tongue, incontinence, losing
- 16 your urine, these are the manifestations of the
- 17 electrical storm in the brain. That you can see
- 18 and if the individual was having a fit of this
- 19 sort and no longer had a fit then that's good
- 20 news, you've observed what appears to be a
- 21 beneficial effect. Of course it might be
- 22 coincidental with the administration of the drug
- 23 but one assumes in such cases that it is due to
- 24 the medicine rather than coincidentally abating
- 25 but one doesn't know that for sure.

- 1 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: If it's non-fitting status
- 2 epilepticus you don't have that.
- 3 A. You don't have that in someone who is not fitting
- 4 so exactly what one measures in this case is not
- 5 clear to me and I think you'd have to ask the
- 6 individuals concerned and better actually asking
- 7 a paediatric neurologist what they think the
- 8 signs would be. As a general physician I find it
- 9 difficult to know what those signs might be.
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: But, doctor, this note was written by
- 11 Dr Webb and this was the first time he had seen
- 12 Claire so he couldn't have had a before and after
- 13 perspective and so far as we know he was not
- 14 accompanied at 2.00-ish pm, when he examined
- 15 Claire, by the doctors who had seen Claire in the
- 16 ward round. So the only possible source of
- 17 information about an improvement would have been
- 18 a nurse who had been on the ward that morning and
- 19 had seen Claire, and was able to tell Dr Webb
- 20 somehow around 2.00 pm that there appeared to be
- 21 some improvement.
- 22 A. But he uses the past tense, "appeared" to improve
- 23 which suggests that someone has said, "We gave
- 24 her the drug and she improved, we thought",
- 25 rather than "appears to have improved" which

- 1 would imply that he had seen such an event but I
- 2 don't think I can comment really more than that.
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: But the point you're making is, I
- 4 gather, that it's actually a bit hard to know
- 5 what the detectable improvement was?
- 6 A. Even, I think, and as I say, this is really a
- 7 question for a paediatric neurologist and the
- 8 people who are on the site but for me it's hard
- 9 to imagine what a nurse might have noted that
- 10 suggested an improvement in her state. Maybe she
- 11 was restless and became less restless, that's
- 12 possible, but that's not evidence of improvement
- 13 in state, that's evidence of sedation. So I am
- 14 speculating and I don't know.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 16 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Just on the characteristics of
- 17 diazepam, what is the half life of diazepam?
- 18 A. Diazepam itself has a relatively short half live
- 19 but its action is mainly mediated through a
- 20 metabolite, a compound to which it is altered in
- 21 the liver, called desmethyldiazepam which
- 22 unusually, because usually metabolism results in
- 23 drugs that have shorter half lives, in this case
- 24 has a longer half life and is active. So the
- 25 main duration of action of the drug is mediated

- 1 by its active metabolite which has a half life
- of, on average, of about 30 hours, something like
- 3 that, quite long.
- 4 Q. So that metabolising effect actually extends what
- 5 is otherwise a relatively short period?
- 6 A. Relatively short. In fact diazepam has many
- 7 metabolites that are active and various drugs
- 8 were discovered as a result of studying the
- 9 metabolites and some of the metabolites which
- 10 have shorter durations of action were
- 11 subsequently marketed as drugs in their own
- 12 right.
- 13 So diazepam is complicated but the overall
- 14 duration of action is related mainly to the
- 15 longest acting metabolite, and that has a half
- 16 life of around 30 hours on average. Pull back up
- 17 with that overlapping medication timeline of 310-
- 18 020-001 and we see this at the top there; that
- 19 broken line for rectal diazepam actually extends
- 20 right up until the second brainstem death test.
- 21 A. And that is at least 30 hours.
- 22 Q. Yes. Now, having a half-life of that length of
- 23 time, what does that actually mean in terms of
- 24 what it is doing in the body or what it could be
- 25 doing in the body?

- 1 A. It tells you that the drug is there, some drug is
- 2 there and for the first half-life, more than half
- 3 is still there. That doesn't tell you what it is
- 4 doing, as I said before. Maybe 5 milligrams
- 5 wasn't enough to have an effect; we don't know,
- 6 but it does tell you at least that some of the
- 7 drug is still there and, of course, the longer
- 8 you go on, the less drug is there and so the less
- 9 effect it's having. How much of an effect it's
- 10 having is impossible to say but clearly, the
- 11 higher the dose, the bigger the effect. Perhaps
- 12 it's worth noting at this point that doubling the
- 13 dose only increases the duration of action by one
- 14 half-life, so if you want to prolong action, you
- 15 are better to give repeated small doses than big
- 16 doses. That's just in passing.
- 17 Q. I think Professor Neville, who is the inquiries'
- 18 expert on paediatric neurology, has been asked
- 19 about the diazepam improvement. I think we could
- 20 find that at page 169 of the transcript on 1st
- 21 November. I am afraid that's one of those
- 22 documents that doesn't come up for you, Dr
- 23 Aronson; I am sorry about that. I think it
- 24 starts at line 17. So you can see when Dr Webb
- 25 says he is under the impression that there has

- 1 been some improvement as a result of the
- 2 administration of rectal diazepam, what is the
- 3 significance of that in terms of trying to work
- 4 out what was wrong with Clare and how best to
- 5 treat her; the answer is:
- 6 "I would say it wasn't dramatic. In other
- 7 words, she didn't drop off to sleep and wake up
- 8 and was talking again, so it wasn't as clear as
- 9 that."
- 10 If you go over the page:
- 11 "I think it was just an improvement in the
- 12 sort of level of responsiveness which I think
- 13 means that it didn't really help a whole lot."
- 14 Unfortunately, we put Professor Neville in the
- 15 position of trying to speculate also because he,
- 16 of course, knows no more than you do about what
- 17 the circumstances in which people are describing
- 18 an improvement but, doing the best he could, his
- 19 impression was it actually probably hadn't helped
- 20 very much at all. I'm not asking you to comment
- 21 because I'm not sure you can comment any further
- 22 yourself but that was just for the benefit of
- 23 those who wanted to know what he said.
- 24 A. I think he's saying pretty much what I said which
- 25 is that you can't really tell. Whether his

- 1 interpretation is correct or not, I don't want to
- 2 comment.
- 3 Q. No. Then in your own report when you're dealing
- 4 with diazepam at 237-002-008, this is to do with
- 5 prescribing diazepam at all in those
- 6 circumstances and you say, in a child, you might
- 7 prefer to choose benzodiazepine with a shorter
- 8 duration of action than diazepam. Why would that
- 9 be?
- 10 A. No. I say in an adult I would consider the use
- 11 of a benzodiazepine to be appropriate although
- 12 one might prefer to choose a benzodiazepine.
- 13 This is interesting because we're talking about
- 14 2012 and 1996.
- 15 Q. Exactly.
- 16 A. My feeling actually in 1996, as well as today,
- 17 but my strong feeling today is that it's
- 18 preferable in these circumstances to choose a
- 19 drug with a shorter duration of action if you can
- 20 because you're more in control of what's going
- 21 on. You can switch it on and off much more
- 22 quickly than if you give a drug that has a
- 23 duration of action that is very long and that's
- 24 it. You can't do anything about that. You have
- 25 to wait.

- 1 Q. Because it's in the system and you can't get rid
- 2 of it.
- 3 A. Because it's in the system and you just have to
- 4 wait for it to dissipate. My own view is that --
- 5 and nowadays, if you look in the current edition
- 6 of the BNF for Children, you will see that
- 7 midazolam is the recommended treatment for status
- 8 epilepticus even though it is not currently
- 9 licensed for that reason. If you look in the
- 10 British National Formulary for 1996, you will see
- 11 that diazepam is recommended and, in fact,
- 12 interestingly it says that lorazepam may also be
- 13 helpful because it has a longer duration of
- 14 action. That was the view in those days.
- Now, my own view at that time, and I know
- 16 because I used to use quite a lot of this
- 17 particular drug, was that I would have tended to
- 18 use a drug called clomethiazole, which was also
- 19 listed in the 1996 edition as a shorter acting
- 20 drug and for the reasons that I have given, but
- 21 my experience was generally that patients with
- 22 difficult epilepsy who would come under my care
- 23 would already have been given diazepam as a first
- 24 measure and that is what the 1996 Formulary
- 25 recommends; diazepam as a first measure to treat

- 1 status epilepticus.
- 2 Q. So although your preference would've been for a
- 3 shorter acting drug, even in 1996, and although
- 4 there are indications currently that one wouldn't
- 5 perhaps use such a long acting drug, in 1996, you
- 6 couldn't say it wasn't appropriate to prescribe
- 7 diazepam in that dosage.
- 8 A. Indeed it was the recommended first line of
- 9 treatment, so not at all inappropriate. My own
- 10 preference, as I say, was in the context
- 11 generally of seeing patients in whom diazepam had
- 12 already been used and had proved ineffective. My
- 13 next choice would, in those days, have been
- 14 clomethiazole. Nowadays, I think, probably most
- 15 people's choice would be midazolam.
- 16 MR FORTUNE: Just picking up something Dr Aronson
- 17 said, diazepam in 1996 was licensed. Dr Aronson
- 18 has said that even in 2012, midazolam is not
- 19 licensed for status epilepticus in children.
- 20 Could Dr Aronson explain what the term "licensed"
- 21 means in these circumstances in case anybody else
- 22 thinks that using a drug non-licence or
- 23 off-licence is, in fact, anything other than
- 24 therapeutic?
- 25 A. Drugs are licensed in the UK by an authority

- 1 called the Medicines and Healthcare Products
- 2 Regulatory Agency, the MHRA. The process whereby
- 3 licences are issued involves the submission to
- 4 the MHRA by the drug company involved of large
- 5 amounts of data on the pharmacology actions,
- 6 uses, effects of the medication for which they
- 7 are seeking a licence and which will have accrued
- 8 generally, on average, over about ten years of
- 9 work.
- 10 The MHRA then looks at the data and if it
- 11 awards a licence, then the terms of that licence
- 12 are regulated by law and the licence has to
- 13 contain certain pieces of information about the
- 14 medication. Anybody who wants to read the
- 15 licence can access the licences in a system known
- 16 as the Summaries of Product Characteristics.
- 17 These are regulated by EU law and have a certain
- 18 format.
- 19 One of the sections is labelled "Indications"
- 20 and in each Summary of Product Characteristics,
- 21 or SMPC, that section details the licensed
- 22 indications. Diazepam for anxiety, for example,
- 23 is a licensed indication and so on. These are
- 24 indications for which the MHRA is convinced that
- 25 there is enough information to say, "You may use

- 1 this drug for this indication".
- 2 Now, I should also explain that there is a
- 3 term of "the label". This is an American term
- 4 but it has come to be used widely. "The label"
- 5 is a description given to the whole licence and
- 6 in addition to indications, the label, the whole
- 7 description includes information such as the
- 8 formulation to be used, the dosage to be given,
- 9 the dose form, the dose in which it's to be
- 10 given, the frequency and so on. If you go
- 11 outside of those instructions, then you are said
- 12 to go "off label", so you haven't changed the
- 13 indication but you've done something else that is
- 14 different from the way the drug is described in
- 15 the label.
- 16 Now, in children, this raises enormous
- 17 difficulties because the vast majority of studies
- 18 on new drugs are carried out in adults. When a
- 19 drug is licensed for the first time, there is
- 20 generally little or no information about its use
- 21 in children. If you look through the BNF for
- 22 Children, it is liberally studded with the
- 23 statement, "Not licensed for this indication".
- 24 Many of the uses of medications in children are
- 25 not licensed because the appropriate clinical

- 1 trials have not been carried out to satisfy the
- 2 regulatory authorities and indeed the drug
- 3 company has probably found it too difficult, time
- 4 consuming and expensive to go to the trouble of
- 5 applying to the authority for a licence in
- 6 children and just doesn't bother. It markets the
- 7 drug and the drug is not used by paediatricians
- 8 but, of course, paediatricians build up a lot of
- 9 experience. They carry out trials of their own,
- 10 they have observations in their own clinical
- 11 experience and even though the amount of
- 12 experience they have and the trials they've
- 13 carried out may not be sufficient to be presented
- 14 to the licensing authority to obtain a licence,
- 15 nonetheless, the paediatricians may be
- 16 sufficiently confident to use the drug unlicensed
- 17 for such an indication.
- 18 For midazolam, for example, that is the case.
- 19 It is recommended for status epilepticus but the
- 20 text says -- if I can find it:
- 21 "Licensed use; injection not licensed for use
- 22 in status epilepticus."
- 23 Yet, if you look at the section on the
- 24 treatment for the management of this condition,
- 25 it says that you can use buccal midazolam or

- 1 intravenous lorazepam. Now, it says "buccal
- 2 midazolam" because the intravenous formulation is
- 3 not licensed but, and you can ask a paediatrician
- 4 this, I would not be surprised if intravenous
- 5 midazolam was used nowadays, in some cases,
- 6 off-licence, to manage status epilepticus.
- 7 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Doctor, the upshot of this is just
- 8 because it isn't licensed for children, doesn't
- 9 mean it's not a beneficial therapy and that many
- 10 paediatricians are using it to good effect. It
- 11 doesn't mean that.
- 12 A. That is correct. In fact, I suspect that, more
- 13 often than not, unlicensed indications are the
- 14 rule rather than the exception in paediatric
- 15 practice; very common at any rate.
- 16 Q. Yes. I am not going to take you to them but, for
- 17 the sake of reference, you have included,
- 18 attached to your report, the Summary of Product
- 19 Characteristics. The one for phenytoin can be
- 20 found starting at 237-002-038 and the one for
- 21 midazolam can be found at 237-002-045.
- 22 A. These are, of course, current SPCs and not 1996.
- 23 Q. Yes and that changes presumably over time.
- 24 A. It does. It changes regularly; year on year it
- 25 changes in sometimes very subtle ways.

- 1 Q. You then, I think, said that at page 237-002-008
- 2 of your report that, in your view, it's desirable
- 3 to obtain an EEG before treating suspected
- 4 non-convulsive status epilepticus. At all, do
- 5 you mean, by anti-convulsive medication?
- 6 A. Yes.
- 7 Q. Why is that?
- 8 A. I might have even said, "Highly desirable".
- 9 Q. Yes.
- 10 A. Some might say mandatory.
- 11 Q. Mandatory.
- 12 A. Some might say that. I wouldn't say that because
- 13 there might conceivably be circumstances in which
- 14 one would want to treat but could not get an EEG
- 15 and that would be a clinical decision that one
- 16 would make. That's another reason why one might
- 17 want to choose a short acting drug because if you
- 18 don't have an EEG on which to base your
- 19 diagnosis, you feel that, in the circumstances,
- 20 it is important to treat nonetheless, you might
- 21 give a short acting drug to hold the fort for the
- 22 time being and then, when the effect of that had
- 23 worn off, then at more greater leisure get the
- 24 EEG. So highly desirable might be the way to put
- 25 it.

- 1 Q. Why do you consider it to be desirable?
- 2 A. Because in this case, I don't think, and again
- 3 this is for a paediatric neurologist to state an
- 4 opinion, but my experience with non-convulsive
- 5 status epilepticus in adults, which is very
- 6 limited because it's not common, is that you
- 7 cannot make a diagnosis comfortably without an
- 8 EEG because there's no outward sign of the storm
- 9 that's going on in the brain in terms of physical
- 10 output as a fit.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: Professor Neville took the view that
- 12 this was a possible diagnosis but rather low on
- 13 the list of possibilities and that influenced him
- 14 in advising that an EEG should have been obtained
- 15 before that was taken as the condition being
- 16 treated.
- 17 A. That implies that this is not a case in which he
- 18 felt that urgent treatment was necessary. He
- 19 felt that was Possible but unlikely. There was
- 20 no rush to treat the putative diagnosis.
- 21 Therefore, wait until you can get an EEG that
- 22 would confirm or deny the diagnosis.
- 23 Q. But meanwhile, you could be testing other things
- 24 on a differential diagnosis?
- 25 A. Well, you could, indeed. If you had a

- 1 differential diagnosis, you could be instituting
- 2 other investigations such as a search for viruses
- 3 that might be causing encephalitis, for example.
- 4 Q. If then we could move on to phenytoin, the first
- 5 administration of phenytoin is at 1445. That's
- 6 635 milligrams and it's given by an IV stat so
- 7 that's a bolus dose. We see that at 092-022-054
- 8 in the clinical notes and it's, "Dr Webb has seen
- 9 the child", as we've just taken you to. Then he
- 10 suggests three things and the first relates to IV
- 11 phenytoin as (inaudible) there:
- 12 "Start on IV phenytoin 18 milligrams a kilo
- 13 stat, followed by 2.5 milligrams a kilo, 12-
- 14 hourly."
- 15 Then:
- 16 "Will need levels 6 hours after loading dose."
- 17 So that's how it comes to the SHO where you
- 18 can see his note just below. The first part of
- 19 it, if we stay with the loading dose part, is to
- 20 attempt to translate that. As is now known and
- 21 he recognises, he ended up with an arithmetical
- 22 error at 632.
- 23 But if I can first ask you the question I've
- 24 asked you in relation to the diazepam: the onset
- of action I think you put in your report was 30

- 1 to 60 minutes. I think -- I advise that's not to
- 2 be pulled up -- at 237-002-009. This seems quite
- 3 a wide range of onset of action, particularly
- 4 when you say that:
- 5 "The onset of action doesn't necessarily mean
- 6 you've reached the therapeutic level."
- 7 So why is there such a wide range?
- 8 A. Well, this is from reported data in the
- 9 literature, and I suspect that it reflects the
- 10 intrinsic variability. The drug has to pass into
- 11 the brain. It has to attach to whatever
- 12 mechanism it acts on, something to do with ion
- 13 transport in the neurons, I suspect. And that
- 14 has to be translated into a downstream action and
- 15 the activity of the brain cells. And these
- 16 things do take time, and there will be
- 17 variability from individual to individual. And
- 18 so that estimate that I have written there is
- 19 based on a literature estimate of reports and
- 20 clinical trials and the like.
- 21 $\,$ Q. Though you do later on in that page -- and maybe
- 22 this is worth pulling up -- at 237-002-009 as to
- 23 how to give a dose like that. You said:
- "To give a dose of 635 [it's just under "(e)"
- 25 at the top] one would use 12.7 milligrams in such

- 1 a solution. You would give it intravenously.
- 2 [Then you say to get at the rate of it] In other
- 3 words, over no less than 9 minutes."
- 4 Why is it that you have to give it in that
- 5 way, so far as you're concerned?
- 6 A. Well, that's the -- that's based on the
- 7 recommended rate, as published in the British
- 8 National Formulary for 1996, and I don't think
- 9 that's changed. The reason it should be given
- 10 slowly is because there is a risk of abnormal
- 11 rhythms in the heart if it's given more quickly.
- 12 This drug acts on electrical tissue in places
- 13 other than the brain. And the main part of the
- 14 body in which there is important electrical
- 15 tissue is in the heart. The wiring of the heart
- 16 is electrical and, if you give phenytoin too
- 17 quickly, there is a risk that you may cause
- 18 abnormal rhythms in the heart.
- 19 Q. Is that why you need to manage it with an ECG
- 20 while you're doing it?
- 21 A. That's right.
- 22 Q. But when you say it should be "no less than 9
- 23 minutes", is that something that, if you are
- 24 having a very junior doctor prescribe it from
- 25 your direction, it should be stated so that

- 1 there's no error if it can have that sort of
- 2 effect?
- 3 A. Yes.
- 4 Q. That should be included in the note?
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 MR COUNSELL: I wonder if Dr Aronson would be able
- 7 just to clarify that, the question and the answer
- 8 perhaps?
- 9 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 10 MR COUNSELL: I wonder if Dr Aronson could deal with
- 11 this. If the instruction's coming from a more
- 12 senior doctor -- the note of course is recorded
- 13 here by a very junior doctor -- is Dr Aronson
- 14 saying that the instructions as to the speed with
- 15 which it should be given should be given by the
- 16 more senior doctor?
- 17 A. I think that whoever is making the decision about
- 18 the prescribing should give that instruction.
- 19 These words are ambiguous, "prescribing",
- 20 "prescription". "Prescribing" could refer to the
- 21 mental processes that lead to the instruction or
- 22 it could refer to writing the prescription.
- 23 "Prescription" could refer to the act of writing
- 24 the prescription, but it could also refer to the
- 25 prescription you take to the chemist. So these

- 1 terms are very vague and ambiguous in some ways.
- 2 To me, prescribing involves the act of
- 3 thinking about it and the act of writing it down.
- 4 Both of those things are prescribing. If I say
- 5 to my junior staff, "I want you to give this
- 6 patient 300 milligrams of phenytoin
- 7 intravenously" -- whatever the does is, doesn't
- 8 matter -- I would say, "And I want you to give it
- 9 over a period". I wouldn't say over "no less
- 10 than ...". I would say, "Give it intravenously
- 11 over 15 minutes", let us say, and that would be
- 12 my definitive instruction. I would then expect
- 13 them to write that down in the notes, "To be
- 14 given phenytoin X milligram per kilogram (or
- 15 whatever it is) over 15 minutes by intravenous
- 16 infusion".
- 17 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: If we pause there and we go to Mr
- 18 Counsell's question, does that mean, therefore,
- 19 that it was for Dr Webb to have included that
- 20 instruction in his note?
- 21 A. If he was the one who was recommending the
- 22 prescription, the prescribing of that drug, then
- 23 I would say yes, he should have either said that
- 24 or said something to the effect, "... and look it
- 25 up".

- 1 Q. Yes.
- 2 MR SEPHTON: And would that apply [inaudible: no
- 3 microphone] if Dr Webb thought he was giving the
- 4 instruction to a registrar rather than an SHO?
- 5 A. I think it would apply to whomever he was giving
- 6 the instruction.
- 7 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: This is in the interests of
- 8 clarity?
- 9 A. Indeed.
- 10 Q. Thank you. So then if we --
- 11 A. And precision actually --
- 12 Q. Exactly what I meant.
- 13 A. -- precision.
- 14 Q. Precision. Then if we stay with that loading
- 15 dose and to see how the direction "IV phenytoin
- 16 18 milligrams per kilo stat dose" turns into a
- 17 prescription, if I can put it that way, or a
- 18 written-up prescription for it to be
- 19 administered.
- 20 A. ... you might say.
- 21 Q. Yes. So the calculation is there at 090-022-054
- 22 but we don't want to pull it up. He simply
- 23 calculates 18 times 24 and gets the incorrect
- 24 answer. But where it gets prescribed is, if one
- goes to 090-026-075, there at the bottom, "This

- 1 is the once only" because it's going to be a stat
- 2 dose so that would be once only. The second
- 3 line, you can see the "635". The time it's
- 4 administered is 2.45 pm by IV and the signature
- 5 bar of the SHO and his initials, indicating that
- 6 that has actually been given at that time.
- 7 I wonder if you can help then. Given the
- 8 half-life of phenytoin and given when it was
- 9 given, when does it reach a therapeutic
- 10 concentration in her system?
- 11 A. If you're giving a loading dose intravenously,
- 12 then the concentration -- and it's given over,
- 13 say, 10 or 15 minutes, then the concentration
- 14 will rise quite rapidly during the infusion. So
- 15 that may be quite a high concentration because
- 16 the drug is restricted to the blood at that
- 17 point. So it rises to a high concentration and
- 18 then starts to fall as the drug is distributed
- 19 throughout the tissues. And then it reaches a
- 20 phase when it is declining very slowly and that
- 21 is the half-life. So the shape of the curve is
- 22 rather like a nose with a tail on it. It goes up
- 23 like a nose like that, and then tails off and
- 24 disappears with the half-life we've discussed.
- 25 So within -- the distribution time probably --

- 1 the distribution time of the blood is one minute.
- 2 The cardiac output is 5 litres per minute. The
- 3 total blood volume is 5 litres. So within one
- 4 minute the drug is uniformly distributed through
- 5 the blood, and so the peak concentration will
- 6 occur for intravenous administration at that
- 7 point. And then depending on the time it takes
- 8 to distribute throughout the tissues, which may
- 9 be quite a long time, it will then fall from that
- 10 concentration to a steady disappearing
- 11 concentration. So it might be half an hour/an
- 12 hour, that sort of order.
- 13 Q. Claire's phenytoin levels were actually checked.
- 14 The blood for those levels seems to have been
- 15 taken at 9.30 pm that evening, although they
- 16 didn't come back to about 11.30 pm. But in any
- 17 event, the result of her phenytoin levels from
- 18 those bloods was 23.4, and I think elsewhere in
- 19 your report you said that's a rather high level.
- 20 A. It is.
- 21 Q. But bearing that mind and from what you've just
- 22 described as to the way the drug acts, can you
- 23 express any view at all as to what her likely
- 24 phenytoin levels would have been by 1525? I
- 25 should say the reason I am asking about that

- 1 particular time is that is the first seizure that
- 2 Claire is recorded as having, the first visible
- 3 one that she's recorded as having.
- 4 A. 1525/1530, that sort of time, is about three-
- 5 quarters of an hour after the intravenous
- 6 infusion. By that time, I would expect that we
- 7 would probably be in the terminal(?) phase that I
- 8 described. And since the drug has a very long
- 9 half-life, it wouldn't change much between 3.30
- 10 pm and nine o'clock when the sample was taken.
- 11 So if it was 23 milligrams per litre at 9.00/9.30
- 12 pm, I would reckon somewhere between 25 and 30 as
- 13 an approximation at 3.30 pm that afternoon. It's
- 14 about that figure but it wouldn't be far off that
- 15 sort of range.
- 16 Q. If it were at that level of concentration in her
- 17 body at that time, is it possible that it could
- 18 have contributed to that seizure?
- 19 A. Well, very occasionally -- and it isn't common --
- 20 it has been reported anticonvulsant drugs, anti-
- 21 epileptic drugs, including phenytoin, can cause
- 22 seizures rather than relieving them. These are
- 23 known as paradoxical seizures and the mechanism
- 24 is not understood. It is therefore possible --
- 25 although I couldn't be sure about it and if you

- 1 ask me to say on the balance of probabilities
- 2 what I thought, I couldn't say as much -- it is
- 3 possible that a seizure at 3.30 pm could have
- 4 been due to phenytoin toxicity.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: So it's possible but not probable?
- 6 A. I'd say that, yeah.
- 7 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: In fact, given the other things
- 8 that might have been going on with Claire, I
- 9 think Professor Neville's evidence is it's really
- 10 impossible to unpick those things and to see to
- 11 what extent this could have been the cause
- 12 because there were other factors that could have
- 13 brought it about. So you can say nothing further
- 14 than "It's possible"?
- 15 A. That's right, and I'm sure he's right. There are
- 16 so many other factors in this case that one can't
- 17 attribute individual events to individual
- 18 factors.
- 19 Q. Can I just ask: because phenytoin is one of those
- 20 drugs that you've described can produce
- 21 paradoxical effects -- and paradoxical,
- 22 presumably means precisely the opposite to what
- 23 you're intending to do. You're intending to
- 24 produce a sedating effect, if I can put it that
- 25 way, or a calming effect on their electrical

- 1 storm and in fact you've done precisely the
- 2 opposite. I presume that's what makes it
- 3 paradoxical?
- 4 A. Indeed.
- 5 Q. But was it known that it had those effects in
- 6 1996?
- 7 A. Yes, I think it was. I'm not entirely certain,
- 8 and I'm just looking to see if I referred to a
- 9 paper that some colleagues had written on the
- 10 subject. I see I haven't. I can't remember at
- 11 the moment whether that is so, but I think that
- 12 this has been described. I would want notice of
- 13 that question.
- 14 Q. If it were to be known in 1996 that, not by any
- 15 means commonly but it could produce those
- 16 effects, and you have a child who is under hourly
- 17 observation if that's a part of what you have
- 18 directed, should the possibility of paradoxical
- 19 or adverse effects be described or explained to
- 20 those who were carrying out the observations so
- 21 that they know to look for these or, if they see
- 22 it, be able perhaps to alert somebody more senior
- 23 to the fact that this might be happening?
- 24 A. Assuming that it was known at that time, I think
- 25 that that's a highly expert judgement and very

- 1 difficult to make. In other words, even if it
- 2 had been described and published at that time, I
- 3 don't think that it was common knowledge. This
- 4 is a very -- I consider this to be a very expert
- 5 opinion in the area.
- 6 Q. So it's not necessarily something that you would
- 7 expect somebody in the position of Dr Webb to
- 8 have been describing to the nurses, "This child
- 9 is going to have a drug that could produce
- 10 certain sort of effects. You should look out for
- 11 that and, if you see it, you should be alerting
- 12 somebody to the fact that that might be
- 13 happening". That's not something you would
- 14 expect?
- 15 A. I would not expect even an expert paediatric
- 16 neurologist, who might well know of the risk of
- 17 paradoxical seizures -- and I'm not saying that
- 18 he did or didn't -- but even if he did, I would
- 19 not expect him to explain that to the nurses in
- 20 these circumstances. It is so uncommon and
- 21 unlikely that it's not something that one would
- 22 state formally in the course of a routine
- 23 management of a patient with status epilepticus.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 25 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: When you mentioned earlier about

- 1 you would have continuous monitoring by an ECG --
- 2 in fact I think you regarded it as essential --
- 3 is that just for the stat dose at 1445 or is that
- 4 also for the infusion that takes place at 2300
- 5 hours or thereabouts?
- 6 A. I would be less concerned about the later
- 7 infusion if the earlier evidence had shown that
- 8 there was no cardiac effect of the loading dose.
- 9 If on the other hand no cardiac monitoring was
- 10 carried out during the loading dose, then I would
- 11 certainly want it to be carried out during the
- 12 next dose.
- 13 Q. Yes. I think the position is that one can't be
- 14 certain that was done during the loading dose.
- 15 But the nurse's note at 090-040-138 indicates
- 16 that it was done for the infusion of a
- 17 maintenance dose. If one turns that around, you
- 18 can see:
- 19 "IV phenytoin directed by a doctor and
- 20 1/1-hour cardiac monitor in situ throughout
- 21 infusion." There is no similar note when it is
- 22 administered later on. But in your view, that's
- 23 really essential; they should have done it for
- 24 the first dose?
- 25 A. Yes.

- 1 Q. All the more given the size of it?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 Q. Okay. I wonder if we can move on now to the
- 4 midazolam; sometimes it's referred to in the
- 5 notes as Hypnovel. That was "12 milligrams"
- 6 actually written down, but I think that none of
- 7 the experts and the clinicians think it was
- 8 actually given as "120 milligrams". That was an
- 9 IV stat dose at 1525. Can you help with what the
- 10 half-life is of this drug?
- 11 A. The half-life of midazolam is quite short, two to
- 12 three hours, and it's for that reason that it is
- 13 nowadays very commonly used, for example, for
- 14 relatively minor surgical procedures such as
- 15 endoscopy and for induction of anaesthesia; in
- 16 other words, bringing on anaesthesia because it
- 17 has such a short duration of action. You give
- 18 it, it has its effect, wears off very quickly.
- 19 Q. What's its onset of action?
- 20 A. After intravenous infusion, probably a few
- 21 minutes, again highly variable but not very long.
- 22 Q. Yes. I'm just seeing where the actual dose is
- 23 first described and it's first described in the
- 24 clinical notes at 090-022-055. You can see it
- 25 right up at the top, the stat dose there. Dr

- 1 Webb, who was the paediatric neurologist, his
- 2 third witness statement describes a little bit
- 3 about how that came about. We don't have to pull
- 4 it up, but it's his third witness statement,
- 5 038-3 at page 2, when he says that he believes
- 6 his communication with the medical staff in
- 7 relation to it was most likely to have been by
- 8 phone as he didn't attend the ward until some
- 9 time later and didn't write the dose himself in
- 10 Claire's notes.
- 11 Now, the first thing before one deals with the
- 12 dose and the way that was translated into the
- 13 prescription, at that stage would you have been
- 14 prescribing and administering midazolam. The "at
- 15 that stage" is: she's had her 5 milligrams of
- 16 rectal diazepam at 1215; she's had phenytoin at
- 17 1445; and quite a large dose -- I think you
- 18 described that as an overdose -- the 635
- 19 milligrams.
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 Q. And now she's having her midazolam at 1525.
- 22 Would you have prescribed midazolam then?
- 23 A. I would have called for a paediatric neurologist
- 24 because you're in trouble. You're in difficulty.
- 25 Q. Why do you say that?

- 1 A. And think probably I wouldn't have given the
- 2 phenytoin at that stage for the reasons that I
- 3 explained before. You don't have a diagnosis,
- 4 it's a long-acting drug, you really don't know
- 5 where you are. This child looks very ill, and
- 6 when exactly it was appreciated that she was very
- 7 ill may not be clear. And this is probably
- 8 continuous deterioration or at least gradual
- 9 deterioration. And at some point or other, a
- 10 discontinuous decision is made, namely to take
- 11 her to the paediatric ICU. When you make that
- 12 decision is difficult. But the tipping point is
- 13 the decision to give midazolam, clearly, because
- 14 at that point she's had diazepam. Somebody
- 15 thought it worked but not well enough not to give
- 16 phenytoin. And presumably the decision to give
- 17 midazolam was based on the view that the -- this
- 18 condition was continuing and maybe even getting
- 19 more serious with a declining Glasgow coma scale,
- 20 for example.
- 21 So the time of giving midazolam was clearly a
- 22 turning point, the point at which it clicked,
- 23 "This child is not well and we are not succeeding
- 24 in improving her condition". And the truth is it
- 25 happened when midazolam was given and she was

- 1 transferred to the ICU.
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: No.
- 3 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Not immediately, no. She wasn't
- 4 transferred to the ICU until about three o'clock
- 5 in the morning of the next day, after she'd had a
- 6 respiratory arrest.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: In fact it's about a 24-hour gap. The
- 8 midazolam --
- 9 A. I'm sorry. I'm sorry, yes. Absolutely, yes ...
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: The other point, doctor, is this: that
- 11 near the start of that answer you said that you
- 12 would have called a paediatric neurologist.
- 13 A. Well, I was speaking as a general physician.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but it was the paediatric
- 15 neurologist who gave the midazolam.
- 16 A. Quite, yes.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Or who decided on the midazolam.
- 18 A. That's to ask a paediatric neurologist. Were I
- 19 in that position at that stage, I would have been
- 20 asking for help because I would have been very
- 21 unhappy, I think, about this girl.
- 22 I'm sorry, you're quite right of course. The
- 23 respiratory arrest and transfer occurred later,
- 24 and no doubt you will want to discuss that.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.

- 1 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes. You described the midazolam
- 2 as a turning point. To be fair to you, I'm not
- 3 sure whether you thought it was a turning point
- 4 because you've reached a stage where you felt you
- 5 needed midazolam or you thought it was a turning
- 6 point because you had believed shortly thereafter
- 7 she went to intensive care. But leaving that
- 8 aside and knowing as you do now that she didn't
- 9 actually go into intensive care until three
- 10 o'clock the following morning, this is all
- 11 happening at 3.25 pm or thereabouts --
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: This is 12 hours earlier.
- 13 Q. Exactly.
- 14 A. My judgement was based on both of those
- 15 considerations, even leaving aside the later
- 16 transfer. I think from what I've heard -- and
- 17 people who were there at the time and those who
- 18 had been more closely involved in her care, we
- 19 need to judge that -- that given that she was
- 20 given diazepam and then given phenytoin, and then
- 21 it was decided that midazolam was needed, I would
- 22 -- at that point as a general physician, I would
- 23 think that there are difficulties in this case.
- 24 And I am seriously worried about the problems
- 25 that the treatment is providing here.

- 1 Q. In terms of the difficulties, are they such that
- 2 you wouldn't have been happy about her being
- 3 treated on a general ward and would have wanted
- 4 her, for example, to be transferred to intensive
- 5 care?
- 6 A. Well, as I say, as a general physician, I would
- 7 look for help from the paediatric neurologist.
- 8 And at that stage, I would at least have thought
- 9 that transfer to a paediatric neurology ward, if
- 10 such existed, or some specialised facility would
- 11 be indicated, if not necessarily transfer to an
- 12 ICU. I would certainly be calling for specialist
- 13 help at this point.
- 14 Q. Those transfers, either to the paediatric
- 15 neurologic ward or to paediatric intensive care,
- 16 are they because of the greater specialism and
- 17 attention of care that she might receive there?
- 18 A. Yes. I think it's a truism that, if you've had a
- 19 stroke, you're better on a stroke unit. If you
- 20 have acute severe diabetes, you're better in a
- 21 ward where people know about the management of
- 22 diabetes. If you are in this position of having
- 23 status epilepticus, as was presumed, or at least
- 24 some difficult neurological problem, then I think
- 25 you're better under the care of a neurologist in

- 1 an environment where the nursing staff and all
- 2 the junior staff are used to taking care of these
- 3 kinds of difficult problems.
- 4 It may be that of course that a bed's not
- 5 available, in which case one would ask for close
- 6 involvement of those individuals. But that would
- 7 be falling short of desirable; that if a bed were
- 8 available in a specialised place, then it does
- 9 seem to me that that's the time when one would
- 10 think about it.
- 11 Q. Thank you. Can I ask you then about the dose?
- 12 The dose itself is 12 milligrams and there is an
- 13 issue between the paediatric neurologist who
- 14 phoned it through. His evidence and his
- 15 statement is that what he said was, "0.15
- 16 milligrams per kilo". It says, you can see
- 17 written down here "0.5" so that has made a
- 18 difference.
- 19 But leaving aside that, and I know you said
- 20 you wouldn't be wanting to do it in these
- 21 circumstances, but if you were prescribing
- 22 midazolam, have you got any comment to make on
- 23 what an appropriate dose might be?
- 24 A. Currently, the dosage that is given in the
- 25 British National Formulary for children is 150

- 1 micrograms per kilogram. That's 0.15 milligrams
- 2 per kilogram, as originally ordered, not 0.5
- 3 milligrams per kilogram, which is at least
- 4 threefold more.
- 5 In the BNF for 1996 of course, it does not
- 6 give a dose because midazolam at that time was
- 7 not licensed it still isn't but was not even
- 8 recommended. And so there is no dosage written
- 9 in the BNF specifically for use in the treatment
- 10 of status epilepticus. What there is is
- 11 information about the use of midazolam by
- 12 intravenous infusion in a child over seven for
- 13 induction of anaesthesia.
- 14 Now, if I was going to use an unlicensed
- 15 product, I would choose a dose that had been
- 16 found to be appropriate in other circumstances,
- 17 although I might not know what the effect would
- 18 be. But that's the dose I would go for, and the
- 19 dose that's given there for a child over 7 years
- 20 is 150 micrograms per kilogram.
- 21 Q. So that would --
- 22 A. So it seems to me that 150 micrograms per
- 23 kilogram is the dose to choose. And you tell me
- 24 that the doctor ordered 0.15 milligram per
- 25 kilogram, which is 150 micrograms per kilogram.

- 1 Q. No, I say that's his evidence that that's what he
- 2 did. But in any event, it would have produced
- 3 3.6 and not 12?
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 Q. How significant is that, the difference between
- 6 the 3.6 and the 12 in these circumstances?
- 7 A. Well, that's at least three times more than would
- 8 be recommended, and that would produce much
- 9 greater sedation than one would expect from the
- 10 appropriate dose.
- 11 Q. Then the product information that I think you
- provided, 237-002-058, which was the Hameln(?)
- 13 product information, that's correct, I think it
- 14 says that:
- 15 "Midazolam should be titrated slowly to the
- 16 desired clinical effect, and the initial dose of
- 17 midazolam should be administered over 2 to 3
- 18 minutes."
- 19 It's just there under "Children". Does that
- 20 accord with how you think it should be
- 21 administered?
- 22 A. Yes, that's reasonable advice.
- 23 Q. If that is how it should be administered, then in
- 24 the same way as I had asked you before about the
- 25 phenytoin, is that something that should have

- 1 been directed?
- 2 A. I think it's less important than with the
- 3 phenytoin, and I wouldn't lay as much stress on
- 4 it. I think the counsel of perfection would be
- 5 to say, "Give it slowly". But I think if I were
- 6 ordering it I would say, "... and look it up in
- 7 the book. Make sure you get it right". The
- 8 phenytoin is much more important because the risk
- 9 of cardiac arrhythmias is really quite high.
- 10 Q. Yes.
- 11 MR COUNSELL: I just wonder if Dr Aronson could
- 12 indicate what he means by "look it up in the
- 13 book"? I don't know whether it would assist him
- 14 if we brought up on the screen the BNF, for which
- 15 I think the reference is 311-028-020.
- 16 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: That's it.
- 17 A. I do refer to the British National Formulary, and
- 18 this is the relevant volume of the British
- 19 National Formulary that I would expect the doctor
- 20 to look at. The section on midazolam does not, I
- 21 think, give this advice. And if you look at the
- 22 section later on, which you may not have, which
- 23 is appendix 6 to the British National
- 24 Formulary --
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Can you give us a page number ...

- 1 A. -- starting at page 598 --
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.
- 3 A. -- entitled "Appendix 6: Intravenous additives",
- 4 if you turn to page 606 where it says, "Phenytoin
- 5 sodium", there are strict instructions about how
- 6 phenytoin should be given. But if you turn to
- 7 the page in which you expect midazolam to be
- 8 listed, there are no instructions. And I take
- 9 that to mean that either it was not known that
- 10 one ought to give this drug slowly at that time,
- 11 or it was not considered to be very important and
- 12 I don't consider it to be hugely important. I do
- 13 consider the phenytoin rate of dosage to be very
- 14 important, and that is borne out by its inclusion
- in that section in the British National
- 16 Formulary.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 18 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: I take it from what you've just
- 19 said that it wouldn't concern you that the
- 20 midazolam was administered as a bolus?
- 21 A. No, I don't think I would be greatly concerned
- 22 about that.
- 23 Q. Although the same product information, at least
- 24 that from the manufacturer, specifically says
- 25 that it shouldn't be administered by a rapid or a

- 1 single bolus IV administration. One finds that
- 2 at 311-034-004. But is that one of those counsel
- 3 of perfection --
- 4 A. I think it probably is. I don't think this is
- 5 hugely important. One gives midazolam quite
- 6 quickly when one is injecting it intravenously
- 7 for endoscopy, for example, although less than
- 8 two to three minutes. And this may -- the SPCs,
- 9 these summaries of product characteristics, are
- 10 very defensive.
- 11 Q. Yes.
- 12 A. They fall on the side of caution and for obvious
- 13 reasons. So I wouldn't lay great stress on that,
- 14 no.
- 15 Q. Leaving aside the rapid or single bolus, which
- 16 comes under the "Precautions", there is some
- 17 other guidance which indicates the potentially
- 18 serious effects of this drug; that it's a serious
- 19 drug, midazolam.
- 20 A. Oh, yes.
- 21 Q. If you've got junior doctors who have never
- 22 prescribed it or administered it, which is the
- 23 evidence of the junior doctors in this case, and
- 24 nurses who are unfamiliar with it and may never
- 25 actually have come across it at all, which I

- 1 believe is also the evidence in this case, then
- 2 is there anything that the prescribing paediatric
- 3 neurologist should say to them? Not necessarily
- 4 about rapid or single boluses, but just to
- 5 impress upon them the potential characteristics
- 6 of this drug with which they may not be familiar?
- 7 A. I'm always reluctant to use drugs in those
- 8 circumstances because the possibility of things
- 9 going wrong is much higher than in the normal
- 10 course of events. But you're going to say, "But
- 11 they did give it, and given that they did give
- 12 it, what should they have done?"
- 13 Q. Yes.
- 14 A. And again I would say the counsel of perfection
- 15 is to say, "Let's look it up. Let's see what the
- 16 current indications for this drug are, what the
- 17 information on its administration is, and so on,
- 18 and let's stick as closely as we can to that
- 19 information". Of course 1996, difficult to find
- 20 that information perhaps. Nowadays, we go to the
- 21 computer on the ward, we press a button and the
- 22 sheet comes up, as it does in this courtroom.
- 23 Q. Well, sir, I --
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: Mr Sephton?
- 25 MR SEPHTON: Perhaps the doctor could be taken to Dr

- 1 Webb's third witness statement, which is 138-3,
- 2 page 4?
- 3 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Certainly.
- 4 MR SEPHTON: I beg your pardon, it must be the --
- 5 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: I think you might want page 5.
- 6 MR SEPHTON: Page 5.
- 7 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: I think you're going the wrong way. Is
- 9 it not --
- 10 MR SEPHTON: No, no, page 5 is the one I had in mind,
- 11 and then please could we have next to that page
- 12 6. And we can see on page 6 in the abstract the
- 13 indication that:
- 14 "0.15 milligrams per kilogram bolus [I
- 15 emphasise that] followed by an infusion."
- 16 Use of midazolam, which is the paper that Dr
- 17 Webb specifically said he'd refer to before he
- 18 told Dr Stevenson what to administer. I think
- 19 the doctor might give his comments on that.
- 20 MR COUNSELL: With respect, I'm not sure that's
- 21 advisable(?).
- 22 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: No.
- 23 MR COUNSELL: The paper that we've just highlighted --
- 24 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Is 1997.
- 25 MR COUNSELL: -- is 1997.

- 1 MR SEPHTON: [inaudible: no microphone] in Vancouver
- 2 and the paper on the left is 1993.
- 3 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Perhaps, Mr Chairman, if we may
- 4 got to what Dr Webb actually did say, which is
- 5 138-3, page 2. He starts immediately under (1),
- 6 which is something that I had read out before.
- 7 He believes he:
- 8 "... suggested midazolam as a next option for
- 9 Claire. But I would not have been certain of the
- 10 dose and would have had to check this by
- 11 reviewing papers kept in my office."
- 12 Then he says:
- "I believe my communication with the medical
- 14 staff in relation to this was most likely to have
- 15 been by phone as I did not attend the ward until
- 16 sometime later and did not write the dose myself
- 17 in Claire's notes. Cannot recall for certain the
- 18 dose that I recommended, but I believe this would
- 19 have been a loading dose of 0.15 milligrams per
- 20 kilo. I believe this because this was the dose
- 21 recommended in the principal paper describing
- 22 midazolam use in this situation at the time."
- 23 He refers to the Critical Care Med paper,
- 24 which is 1993, and then he says that:
- 25 "There were several other shorter papers

- 1 recommending a similar bolus dose."
- 2 and then goes on to refer to a subsequent
- 3 paper, but he certainly doesn't say that a 1997
- 4 paper is what led him to prescribe the dose in
- 5 1996. If we pull that up and have the two things
- 6 side by side again, which is page 5 and page
- 7 6 ...
- 8 THE CHAIRMAN: So if we go back to 138-3, page 5, and
- 9 drop page 2.
- 10 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes, thank you very much, Mr
- 11 Chairman (inaudible), yes. So it's the page 5
- 12 one that Dr Webb says that he used in order to
- 13 get the dose and to telephone through to the ward
- 14 what they should do. One of the things that I
- 15 wanted to, if you like, comment on is if you see
- 16 after it says "The objective" -- and this is, I
- 17 presume, a test to a trial or a test carried out
- 18 with a limited number of children for research
- 19 purposes -- then you see "The design", and then
- 20 you see "(inaudible) in the paediatric intensive
- 21 care unit". Does that indicate anything about at
- 22 that time, and this of course would be 1993 but
- 23 at that time what they thought about where you
- 24 were best placed administering this medication to
- 25 children?

- 1 Q. I don't think it -- you might infer that, but I
- 2 don't think it implies it necessarily. It's
- 3 merely the place where the trial was carried out.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: No, I understand but I'm lost about how
- 5 "I infer it but don't imply it" or "imply it but
- 6 don't infer it".
- 7 A. You might infer it from what is written, but what
- 8 is written does not necessarily imply it. The
- 9 direction is important, right?
- 10 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: It's very subtle.
- 12 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: But in any event, that is the
- 13 paper that Dr Webb referred to. Having read that
- 14 part out of his witness statement, whether it's
- 15 to be implied or inferred, it would appear that
- 16 he himself was not so familiar with the
- 17 medication. Because he had to go and check what
- 18 its dose was from the time when he had been in
- 19 Canada, and he then phones that dose through to
- 20 the SHOs. Their evidence, as I told you, was
- 21 that they certainly didn't know about it. At
- 22 least, Dr Stevenson who is a person who writes it
- 23 up, he didn't know about it at all. So that's
- 24 why I had asked you: in those circumstances, what
- 25 is the obligation of Dr Webb to make sure that

- 1 the junior doctors, and if necessary the nurses
- 2 who are going to be carrying out their
- 3 observations of Claire, understand about the drug
- 4 that is going to be administered to her.
- 5 A. There's something of Alexander Pope that says,
- 6 "Be not the first to try a new treatment, but
- 7 don't be the last either". Somebody has to take
- 8 up a new treatment when it appears, and what has
- 9 happened here is that Rivera et al, as we can
- 10 see, have carried out a small clinical trial, an
- 11 open but prospective trial, not strong evidence
- 12 but some evidence, that suggests that this
- 13 medication may be of benefit in patients who are
- 14 in paediatric intensive care units who have
- 15 status epilepticus, presumably convulsive status,
- 16 not non-convulsive status.
- 17 So the evidence for this is not very good
- 18 here, but nonetheless the doctor has decided that
- 19 he will try it because this is a difficult case
- 20 and thinks it might help. And his assessment is
- 21 that it's probably quite safe, and so the balance
- of benefit to harm, the balance of possible
- 23 benefit, which he is inferring from the published
- 24 study, he is taking out from the published study,
- 25 is likely to outweigh the possible harm from this

- 1 drug. And that's fine. I don't have any problem
- 2 with that. A specialist in the field, who has
- 3 experience in -- experience of managing such
- 4 patients, does sometimes have to try new things
- 5 based on whatever evidence is available at the
- 6 time, even though the evidence may not be as
- 7 strong as one would want. That's the first
- 8 point. So I don't think there's anything to say
- 9 that this should not have been a possible way of
- 10 proceeding in these circumstances, given all the
- 11 caveats we've discussed before.
- 12 The second point then, which is what you're
- 13 asking about, is how to communicate the
- 14 uncertainty in this decision, and how to
- 15 communicate the way in which one should proceed.
- 16 And it's my view in such circumstances that, when
- 17 you are dealing with what is really quite an
- 18 experimental treatment it's a small, open
- 19 study; it's not double-blind, placebo-controlled;
- 20 it's in patients who have different conditions,
- 21 not well described in the abstract but presumably
- 22 better described in the main paper this really
- 23 -- it's an early use of this drug and one ought
- 24 to take great care when communicating to one's
- 25 staff that one wants to use this drug.

- 1 To do it over the phone creates difficulties.
- 2 Communication by phone is not ideal. And if
- 3 indeed the doctor said on the phone "0.15" and
- 4 the doctor at the end of the phone wrote "0.5",
- 5 that's merely an illustration of the difficulty
- 6 that can arise.
- 7 So yes, I do think that a doctor, who is in
- 8 this position, as we've described it, has a duty
- 9 to be careful about his or her communication of
- 10 how this drug should be used and the precautions
- 11 that need to be taken.
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: Professor Neville's overall observation
- 13 of Dr Webb was that he's to be complimented and
- 14 praised for the efforts that he went to to help
- 15 Claire. Professor Neville's concern, however,
- 16 was that he was simply on the wrong track. And
- 17 the fact, if I take his statement that he did go
- 18 off and check some papers that he had access to
- 19 what the appropriate dosage was, that confirms
- 20 the first point anyway, doesn't it? That he did
- 21 go to some lengths to do whatever he could to
- 22 have a check?
- 23 A. Undoubtedly. Oh, I do agree. I think the fact
- 24 that he has seen this drug used when he was in
- 25 Canada, I think he said although he didn't

- 1 think that he'd used it himself; he knows the
- 2 paper to look up; he's gone to the trouble of
- 3 looking it up, getting a copy, reading it,
- 4 thinking about it; all that confirms what you've
- 5 said. But if the diagnosis is wrong, then it
- 6 rather vitiates the -- that side of the action.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: We build into the equation also
- 8 presumably that Dr Webb was also the reason -- it
- 9 may be that the reason that he didn't come
- 10 himself to the ward at that time and see Claire
- 11 but did it over the phone to Dr Stevenson was
- 12 that he had his own list to deal with that day.
- 13 He had other children presumably he was looking
- 14 after whom he had to devote himself to as best he
- 15 could.
- 16 Q. It does happen, but nonetheless does not alter
- 17 the fact that communication by telephone is --
- 18 can be hazardous.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 20 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you. Then if we go to --
- 21 MR FORTUNE: [inaudible: no microphone], looking at
- 22 page 5 under the heading "Measurement and main
- 23 results", the sentence that starts:
- 24 "None of the patients had clinically important
- 25 changes in blood pressure, heart rate, oxygen

- 1 saturation or respiratory (inaudible)
- 2 attributable to the use of midazolam."
- 3 Which instruments would be used to measure
- 4 those changes, bearing in mind that midazolam is
- 5 being administered by a junior doctor?
- 6 A. It varies and with time the instrumentation
- 7 improves, becomes more sophisticated. But blood
- 8 pressure cuffs, sphygmomanometers, to measure
- 9 blood pressure. In some cases, particularly
- 10 nowadays, in-dwelling cannulae in the artery can
- 11 measure blood pressure directly. But more likely
- 12 a cuff from a sphygmomanometer measuring blood
- 13 pressure. Heart rate: probably with a cardiac
- 14 monitor. Oxygen saturation: nowadays with a
- 15 little instrument that fits over the thumb or a
- 16 finger that measures the colour of the blood in
- 17 the finger. It gives you a measure of oxygen
- 18 saturation. And respiratory status would be
- 19 counting the respirations. So these are things
- 20 that would either be done automatically by
- 21 monitoring instruments -- I can't remember what
- 22 it was like in 1996 --
- 23 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Well, that's exactly the point
- 24 that I was going to ask you, doctor, because --
- 25 A. -- or perhaps by direct measurement by the

- 1 nursing staff putting a blood pressure cuff on,
- 2 feeling the heart rate, counting the respiratory
- 3 rate.
- 4 Q. That is exactly the point that I was going to ask
- 5 you because although it's of intellectual
- 6 interest to know what is done now in the
- 7 prescription of midazolam, from the point of view
- 8 of this case and the clinicians who found
- 9 themselves in the position of having to treat
- 10 Claire in her condition, 1996 is what's
- 11 important.
- 12 A. True.
- 13 Q. And this is the paper for 1993, and is indicating
- 14 amongst other things these measurements that were
- 15 being taken. And I think what Mr Fortune was
- 16 asking you is: in the 1996 setting in Claire's
- 17 circumstances I think that's what he was asking
- 18 what should have been being tested then?
- 19 A. Well, this is --
- 20 MR FORTUNE: We are only talking about 1996.
- 21 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 22 A. But the paper is 1993. It's what is described.
- 23 Well, vital signs; this is what we're talking
- 24 about. When the nurses are asked to make
- 25 observations, these are the observations that

- 1 they're being asked to make, in addition to
- 2 neurological observations.
- 3 Q. Well, that's what I was going to ask you. Are
- 4 not these observations that the nurses would be
- 5 making in any event?
- 6 A. Yes, indeed.
- 7 Q. And this paper doesn't suggest that the nurses
- 8 would have to do anything different in relation
- 9 to the administration of midazolam?
- 10 A. Not as stated here. But the clinician might say,
- 11 "Do it every hour", rather than whatever the
- 12 nurses were doing at the time. In other words,
- 13 the clinician might order a review of the
- 14 patient's status at a different time than the
- 15 nurses would normally be expecting to do that,
- 16 which might be four-hourly. But the actual
- 17 measurements would not be any different to what
- 18 they would normally be doing when observing vital
- 19 signs.
- 20 Q. Would you have thought it advisable that she's
- 21 connected to a heart monitor?
- 22 A. At this stage, probably not, as long as phenytoin
- 23 is not being administered, and there's no
- 24 indication here of problems with the heart. I
- 25 suppose that in an intensive care unit it would

- 1 be routine.
- 2 Q. Yes.
- 3 A. But in an ordinary ward, I think I wouldn't be
- 4 strongly advocating that.
- 5 Q. Thank you. Well, if we can move on to the
- 6 phenytoin and the subsequent administration of
- 7 phenytoin. That happens at 2300 hours, and you
- 8 have to go back to see what Dr Webb directed so
- 9 that one can see how that is translated into a
- 10 prescription that is written up by Dr Stevenson.
- 11 And what he directed is at 090-022-054, and you
- 12 can see there:
- 13 "After the stat dose followed by 2.5
- 14 milligrams per kilo, 12-hourly."
- 15 I think you'll find in the course of this that
- 16 I have left off the sodium valproate which
- 17 happened at 5.15 pm but I'll take you back to
- 18 that in a minute. Now that we're here, let's
- 19 deal with the phenytoin. So that's what he wants
- 20 to happen afterwards and then he says:
- "Will need levels 6 hours after loading dose."
- 22 How do you interpret that direction to the
- 23 junior doctor? What should he have made of that?
- 24 A. Well, the directions there is give intravenous
- 25 phenytoin stat, a single dose, and we've

- 1 discussed the direction for doing that. And
- 2 "Will need levels 6 hours after loading dose"
- 3 means take blood to have the serum/phenytoin
- 4 concentration measured six hours after you give
- 5 the phenytoin. That, I think, is
- 6 straightforward.
- 7 The difficulty arises here, I think, in
- 8 interpreting the direction "2.5 milligram per
- 9 kilogram 12-hourly". That suggests that -- the
- 10 note "followed by 2.5 milligram per kilogram 12-
- 11 hourly", that suggests a maintenance dose of 2.5
- 12 milligram per kilogram, and when the second
- 13 maintenance dose is given, it should be given 12
- 14 hours after the first.
- 15 It might also imply that the first maintenance
- 16 dose should be given 12 hours after the loading
- dose, but it doesn't actually say that, doesn't
- 18 say when the first maintenance dose should be
- 19 given. It merely says that the maintenance doses
- 20 should be given 12-hourly.
- 21 Q. Well, we can see what Dr Stevenson in fact made
- 22 of that. It's 090-026-075. If one looks up at
- 23 the top, you have 60 milligrams which he has
- 24 calculated it out as 60 and we see how he got to
- 25 60 from the left-hand side. He had 2.5

- 1 milligrams times the 24; that got him 60. See
- 2 that from the medical notes. That's his notation
- 3 there on the left-hand side. So he got 60
- 4 milligrams 12-hourly. Then if you look at the
- 5 actual prescription, he's got 60 milligrams and
- 6 he ticks 8.30 pm and 9.30 pm. So that's going to
- 7 be 9.30 pm that evening when a dose is going to
- 8 go on which is about seven hours or so after the
- 9 loading dose, and then another one at 8.30 pm
- 10 which is about 12 hours afterwards. So that's
- 11 what he made of that and that's his signature
- 12 there.
- 13 And then that prescription was rewritten and
- 14 it's changed in certain respects but not that
- 15 much(?) so that remains the same. And then if
- 16 one looks at the IV fluids to actually try and
- 17 see what did happen, you can see if you go to
- 18 090-038-135. Sorry, I beg your pardon.
- 19 A: Before you move on to that, can I just ask you a
- 20 question about the left-hand side.
- 21 Q. Yes.
- 22 A: Can we go back, thank you. It says "2.30 pm", is
- 23 that right, above you?
- 24 Q. Yes.
- 25 A: We were talking, I think about 2.45 pm before so

- 1 that's, I suppose, in the same ballpark:
- 2 "24 kilograms, 18 milligram per kilogram.
- 3 Loading dose wrongly calculated as 632.
- 4 Subsequently given as 635."
- 5 Right.
- 6 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: So where that is highlighted
- 7 yellow, I'm asking you about the dose that he
- 8 subsequently calculates ...
- 9 A. ... He's then suggesting that he's going at some
- 10 time to do it and this is the instruction he's
- 11 repeating:
- 12 "Phenytoin 60 milligrams 12-hourly either IV
- 13 or orally."
- 14 Right. And "... check levels [he says] at
- 9.00 pm", which is 61/2 hours, yes, all right,
- 16 after the note when he's going to give the
- 17 loading dose. Okay, good. And then he writes,
- 18 "Phenytoin 9.30 pm tonight" and retrospectively,
- 19 it looks like, but actually looking forward to
- 20 tomorrow, "8.30 am" tomorrow.
- 21 Q. Yes. Well, can I just pause there. What is the
- 22 purpose of him being directed to check the
- 23 phenytoin levels at nine o'clock?
- 24 A. My view is of that is, I would say, check the
- 25 plasma concentrations, the levels, if you like,

- 1 sometime this afternoon or this evening to see if
- 2 the dose was right, to see if the dose was
- 3 appropriate. There's no point in measuring the
- 4 plasma concentration unless you're going to use
- 5 the information.
- 6 Q. So then what happens afterwards is contingent.
- 7 A. Absolutely.
- 8 Q. So if that is an acceptable level of
- 9 concentration of the dose, then you move on and
- 10 you administer your 60 milligrams and 12 hours
- 11 thereafter you administer another lot of 60 mg.
- 12 A. Indeed, and this is the problem with advance
- 13 directives. I tell you, "Give the phenytoin now.
- 14 He is the dose. Give some more later as a
- 15 maintenance dose". And you take that and say,
- 16 "Right, I'll do that" then you stop thinking
- 17 about it.
- 18 THE CHAIRMAN: But sorry, the safeguard is to check
- 19 the level in between surely?
- 20 A. The safeguard is firstly to check the
- 21 concentration, the level, and then to decide what
- 22 dose to give, not to decide in advance that you
- 23 will give 60 mg 12-hourly. The decision to give
- 24 the maintenance dose is contingent upon the
- 25 plasma concentration measurement.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: But then can that be read to say, well,
- 2 "Check the level" or "Check the concentration",
- 3 and we know that the concentration came back in
- 4 excess of what one would expect at 23.4, I think.
- 5 A. Yes.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: So should that have prompted a
- 7 reconsideration of whether to go ahead and give
- 8 the second dose?
- 9 A. Indeed it should, but by then the second dose had
- 10 already been given, as I understand.
- 11 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Well, that's not entirely clear.
- 12 There is some debate about whether the second
- 13 dose was given after the information came through
- 14 of the levels. It's just a difference in the
- 15 notation. But in any event, as I understand you
- 16 to be answering the Chairman, the purpose of
- 17 checking it is to make sure that you move on on
- 18 the basis of an appropriate level of phenytoin
- 19 concentration in her system.
- 20 A. Otherwise why measure the concentration at all if
- 21 you're not going to do that. Could I just go
- 22 back to the yellow on the left, the top yellow?
- 23 Q. Yes.
- 24 A. Because in a sense, the instruction is -- could
- 25 be better. It could say, "Give intravenous

- 1 phenytoin 18 mg per kg as a loading dose. Check
- 2 the plasma concentration 6 hours later. If
- 3 satisfactory, give a maintenance dose of 2.5 mg
- 4 12-hourly".
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but I think to be fair to Dr Webb
- 6 on this point, it wouldn't take a lot of
- 7 imagination to read into that; that if the level
- 8 is in excess of what one would expect, that that
- 9 should prompt a reconsideration.
- 10 A. Absolutely. I agree entirely with that. That's
- 11 what one would infer from reading that. If it
- 12 had been written differently, it would have been
- 13 clear.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, it could have been spelt out ...
- 15 A. Could have been spelt out more clearly. But
- 16 you're right that that's what one should perhaps
- 17 have thought from what he wrote.
- 18 Q. What about the timing? The levels are going to
- 19 be checked in six hours' time, which was about
- 20 9.00. In fact, the nurse had written up in the
- 21 nursing notes that they were to be checked, or at
- 22 least the bloods were to be drawn for them to be
- 23 checked, at 9.00. In fact, it happens at 9.30,
- 24 so there or thereabouts. So that's what's to
- 25 happen within the 6 hours, and is the 12-hourly

- 1 dose, then, to happen 12 hours after that stat
- 2 dose is given, if, in 6 hours' time her levels
- 3 are acceptable?
- 4 A. That's what I would direct. Whether that was
- 5 what was in the mind of the prescribing doctor, I
- 6 can't say.
- 7 Q. I understand.
- 8 A. But I think that is a reasonable strategy.
- 9 Q. Yes, and then when the actual levels come back,
- 10 they come back at 11.30 pm, and at that time it
- 11 would appear that the dose which was prescribed
- 12 is given. What should have been the response of
- 13 learning at 11.30 pm that bloods taken at 9.30 pm
- 14 produced a phenytoin concentration of 23.4? What
- 15 should have been the response to that?
- 16 A. That the loading dose was too high for that
- 17 patient. Even leaving aside the question of the
- 18 miscalculation, the dose was given; that was
- 19 done. Having received notice of the plasma
- 20 concentration or the sodium concentration,
- 21 whichever it was, which was 23, I would say that
- 22 is higher than I would have wanted it to be. The
- 23 target range that you're aiming for is somewhere
- 24 between 10 and 20, on average, and that's what
- one goes for; it's the best one can do. Going

- 1 above that implies the possibility of toxicity.
- 2 Q. Doing the best you can with what you would have
- 3 expected one of your junior doctors to do in that
- 4 situation, if I can put it that way, what would
- 5 you have wanted to happen when that was received
- 6 at 11.30 pm and you're thinking, "Should I be
- 7 giving any more of this directed phenytoin?"
- 8 A. I'd expect him to phone me.
- 9 Q. To phone you?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 Q. As a consultant?
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 Q. Not the registrar?
- 14 A. No. Well, he might, but I -- I was the one who
- 15 did the prescription, and I would -- if I came
- 16 round the next morning and found that this had
- 17 happened, I would be very angry, because I'm
- 18 presuming now that I had given clear
- 19 instructions, as we discussed before, but if he
- 20 had -- if he gave the -- the maintenance dose,
- 21 the first maintenance dose before getting the
- 22 plasma phenytoin concentration, that would be
- 23 wrong. If he knew the plasma concentration and
- 24 nonetheless gave the maintenance dose, that would
- 25 be wrong, and I would be very annoyed that if he

- 1 had -- if he had not consulted someone at least -
- 2 and I would be delighted if he consulted me, I
- 3 would not mind in the slightest.
- 4 If he consulted the registrar and the
- 5 registrar said, "Oh, that's okay, go ahead", then
- 6 I'm not sure how I'd react, but --
- 7 Q. Actually I think that's what the junior doctor's
- 8 evidence was; that he consulted the registrar, Dr
- 9 Bartholomew and she said to continue. That is
- 10 his evidence.
- 11 A. I see, yeah.
- 12 Q. What's your reaction to that?
- 13 A. I'd be at least very disappointed.
- 14 MALE SPEAKER 1: Am I right in remembering that
- 15 Professor Neville said this was a bit high but it
- 16 was okay to go ahead?
- 17 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 18 A. I'm sorry, I disagree with that.
- 19 MALE SPEAKER 1: Okay, don't apologise. It's not the
- 20 first disagreement.
- 21 MALE SPEAKER 2: Can I just make a point here and ask
- 22 while we're on this subject? If one did the
- 23 checking and came along later in the evening and
- found that at page 56 of the notes we have "23.4"
- $25\,$ $\,$ and in brackets after it we have, "Between 10 and

- 1 20," which seems to be the doctor reminding he or
- 2 she that that was what range should be, as the
- 3 witness has said. Should someone not have
- 4 checked back to see why it's an overdose and look
- 5 back at the calculation at page 54 of the notes?
- 6 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: That was actually going to be my
- 7 next question. Once anybody had recognised that
- 8 they were over the target range, if I can put it
- 9 that way, and you said -- when I asked you the
- 10 question, you said, "Well, that would imply too
- 11 much had been given", then does somebody not go
- 12 back and look and see what was prescribed, what
- is recorded as having been administered?
- 14 A. Yes, you might do that.
- 15 Q. Should you do it?
- 16 A. Ideally, yes. By that stage --
- 17 MALE SPEAKER 1: But that's less important.
- 18 A. I think at that stage the horse has bolted,
- 19 really.
- 20 MALE SPEAKER 1: That's less important than deciding
- 21 what to do next.
- 22 A. Absolutely.
- 23 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 24 A. Which is why I'm saying, "Yes, you might do it;
- 25 ideally you would do it". But that horse has

- 1 bolted, it's done; you're not going to be able to
- 2 do anything about that.
- 3 Q. In a way, that's a teaching issue ...
- 4 A. To an extent.
- 5 Q. You might deal with your registrar or junior
- 6 doctor afterwards when you had ...
- 7 A. To an extent, yes, you might.
- 8 Q. ... addressed matters.
- 9 A. Indeed. But there is -- there is a point to this
- 10 question which I think is important, and that is
- 11 that the calculation of the maintenance dose does
- 12 depend on the relationship between the loading
- 13 dose and the plasma concentration, so in the cold
- 14 light of day I'm sure I would do that.
- I would go back and I would draw the graphs,
- 16 actually, of concentration versus dose, and there
- 17 are ways of doing this. And I would certainly go
- 18 back and look at the loading dose, draw the
- 19 loading dose against the plasma concentration to
- 20 calculate the kinetics of the drug in that
- 21 individual, and from that information I would
- 22 predict the maintenance dose. I think that's a
- 23 difficult exercise to expect a junior hospital
- 24 doctor to do.
- 25 Q. But you as a prescribing consultant might do it?

- 1 A. I as a clinical pharmacologist could and would
- 2 certainly do it.
- 3 Q. Yes. Can I ask you, Dr Stevenson had originally
- 4 envisaged that the phenytoin would be given at
- 5 9.30.
- 6 A. I'm sorry, say that again.
- 7 Q. Sorry, I beg your pardon. Dr Stevenson, who is
- 8 the SHO, in his prescription which is still there
- 9 on the screen (you can see it), that that
- 10 phenytoin would be given at 9.30; that's what he
- 11 thought, and it may be because he thought that
- 12 the levels were going to be checked at 9.00, but
- 13 that doesn't equate to 12-hourly after the
- 14 loading dose.
- 15 A. No, well that's why I said it's not clear what
- 16 that instruction means in relation to the timing
- 17 of the first maintenance dose. It's clear about
- 18 the timing of the second maintenance dose; it
- 19 should be 12 hours after the first. It does not
- 20 specify that the first maintenance dose should be
- 21 12 hours after the loading dose. Now, clearly,
- 22 as you've just said, the doctor did not interpret
- 23 it in that way. He wrote down "9.30" which is
- 24 what, seven hours or so after.
- 25 Q. Well, in fairness to Dr Stevenson, he might have

- 1 worked that out subsequently because in fact
- 2 somebody knew, or decided to give it at 11.30.
- 3 If there was a change of that sort, would you
- 4 expect any kind of record to be made as to how we
- 5 get from Dr Stevenson's prescription that it
- 6 should be given at 9.30 to the administration by
- 7 Dr Stewart at 11.30?
- 8 A. Um ... if a nurse had been going to give it, I
- 9 would have expected it to be given at 9.30 or
- 10 thereabouts, because the nurses adhere to the
- 11 instructions in the prescription chart. If a
- 12 doctor were going to give it, I might expect the
- 13 difference between the written and the given time
- 14 to be greater because doctors are busy doing
- 15 things off the ward and may not get there in
- 16 time.
- 17 So it could be -- one explanation would be
- 18 that the doctor was busy and couldn't get there
- 19 in time to give the dose. Beyond that, it may be
- 20 that the other doctor wanted to wait for the
- 21 blood concentration to come back before making a
- 22 decision. I can only speculate, I don't know.
- 23 Q. Yes, if we then look at the fluid balance sheet
- 24 at 090-038-135, this is one of the places where
- 25 you get some guidance as to when these

- 1 intravenous drugs were actually being
- 2 administered. You can see there the midazolam,
- 3 which I'm going to have to come back to, adjusted
- 4 the stat dose of midazolam, but that's a
- 5 continuous dose of midazolam. You can see that
- 6 that is at 4.00. And then you see at -- it's
- 7 slightly obliterated, but in fact it's at 2300
- 8 hours; working across you can see, "3 ml per hour
- 9 [it looks like], phenytoin." Or maybe that's the
- 10 midazolam. Sorry, I beg your pardon; that is the
- 11 midazolam. Just ...
- 12 A. Is that -- is that ...
- 13 Q. Just -- just -- sorry, I beg pardon. Just above
- 14 that you see the 60, so that's the phenytoin
- 15 going in.
- 16 A. Yeah, okay, so at 2300 -- or 2200; do we know?
- 17 Q. Can you tell from looking at that fluid balance
- 18 sheet when the phenytoin is actually given and
- 19 how much of it is given?
- 20 A. Well what I see is that at 2300, obscured by the
- 21 hole in the paper but clearly 2300, 11.00 pm,
- 22 phenytoin is given.
- 23 Q. Yes.
- 24 A. That's what it appears to be saying. It doesn't
- 25 appear to be saying what dose is -- what dosage -

- 1 what dose was given. There is a "60" written
- 2 above it, but that's at 2200; it's not clear that
- 3 it relates to the phenytoin.
- 4 Q. No, I think, in fairness, that's carrying down
- 5 the acyclovir figure, which is 60.
- 6 A. Right, okay.
- 7 Q. So that's not the phenytoin. Is it clear from
- 8 that record ...
- 9 A. Well in that case it just says -- it just says
- 10 "phenytoin."
- 11 Q. Yes, so there's no ...
- 12 A. Of course, the drug chart says 60 mg.
- 13 Q. Yes. So that would be given in what, just a push
- 14 through?
- 15 A. No, that again would have to be given by slow
- 16 intravenous infusion over at least a few minute
- 17 at any rate. Not as slowly as the 600 mg but
- 18 over a minute or two, perhaps.
- 19 Q. What would it be given in?
- 20 MALE SPEAKER 3: Can I help Dr Aronson, because in
- 21 fact in the nursing notes there is the answer at
- 090-040-138, because at 11.00 pm, in the
- 23 handwriting of Staff Nurse McCann it says:
- 24 "IV phenytoin erected by doctor and run over
- 25 one hour, cardiac monitor in situ throughout

- 1 infusion."
- 2 A. One hour, yeah, yes.
- 3 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes, thank you.
- 4 A. Yes, thank you, we saw that before and thank you
- 5 for reminding me. I would expect it to be -- to
- 6 answer your question, I would expect it to be
- 7 made up in saline, 0.9 per cent saline, which is
- 8 always the default position for infusing drugs.
- 9 Q. If you look at the intravenous fluid prescription
- 10 chart at 090-038-136, you can see that that has
- 11 specified the normal saline for the midazolam and
- 12 underneath that it looks as if they had put
- 13 phenytoin there and crossed that out. I may be
- 14 wrong; it is difficult to see.
- But in any event, it doesn't indicate what the
- 16 phenytoin should be put into to infuse it. Is
- 17 there any reason that you can think of why it
- 18 would specify what it is for midazolam and not
- 19 for phenytoin?
- 20 A. The only suggestion I can make is to return to
- 21 the British National Formulary in the appendix
- 22 that we were discussing before, where phenytoin
- 23 is specified quite clearly as to be given in --
- 24 in saline, and therefore one might think that
- 25 there was no need to specify it otherwise.

- 1 Whereas midazolam is not specified at all, and
- 2 one might therefore want to specify that saline
- 3 was to be used in that case.
- 4 Q. Just while we are here and you say that, how
- 5 would Dr Stevenson have known to use normal
- 6 saline for midazolam if it's not specified in the
- 7 BNF which is where he might have gone to look?
- 8 A. Because for intravenous infusion, saline, I would
- 9 say, is the default position. If you're not
- 10 sure, then saline is a safe medium in which to
- 11 infuse any drug.
- 12 Q. Thank you.
- 13 A. There are one or two minor exceptions, but that
- 14 is what one would do if one didn't know.
- 15 Q. Yes. I wonder if I then could just go back to do
- 16 the continuous infusion of midazolam. The
- 17 clinical note records that at 090-022-055, and
- 18 you can see it says, "2 mcg by kilogram per
- 19 minute." And then Dr Stevenson -- it's him doing
- 20 it, this is his note -- he calculates that out as
- 21 69 mg per 24 hours. There's nothing wrong with
- 22 that calculation?
- 23 A. I think that's right.
- Q. And that then has to turn itself into a
- 25 prescription and one sees his prescription for

- 1 that. It's at 090-026-075. If we just blow up
- 2 the top one because that's at B. There we are.
- 3 That's his prescription, and then the
- 4 prescription gets rewritten. If one looks at
- 5 090-026-073 it's rewritten there.
- 6 It's a bit difficult to see, but it's the
- 7 second line, and it looks like:
- 8 "2 ml increased by 1 ml an hour to 3 ml an
- 9 hour every 5 minutes."
- 10 In fact I think the nursing note helps with
- 11 that; just to see that more clearly it's at
- 12 090-040-141. Then if you turn that round you can
- 13 see:
- 14 "Continuous infusion running at 2 ml per hour
- of Hypnovel [that's the midazolam], to increase
- 16 by ..."
- 17 -- is it 0.1, or ...
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 Q. Yes, 0.1, because it's now millilitres. 5
- 20 minutes until up to 3 ml an hour.
- 21 Is it possible to see from the clinical note
- 22 that he takes of what Dr Stevenson believes Dr
- 23 Webb has told him over the phone, or told him,
- 24 how he gets to that prescription?
- 25 A. Can we go back to ...

- 1 Q. Yes, if we go back to the clinical note again at
- 2 090-022-055.
- 3 A. Yes, I'd also actually like to go back to the
- 4 first prescription.
- 5 Q. Sorry, yes.
- 6 A. Not the one that was rewritten but the one -- the
- 7 open that was to be eventually rewritten.
- 8 0. 090-026-075.
- 9 A. Can we just enlarge the top bit of that?
- 10 Q. Yes.
- 11 A. Actually, I'd like to talk about the whole thing,
- 12 in fact.
- 13 Q. Yes?
- 14 A. the first thing to say I that the British
- 15 National Formulary is very clear about
- 16 prescription writing for doses that are less than
- 17 1 mg, in other words, in micrograms; and this is
- 18 true of the 1996 BNF. It says:
- 19 "Quantities less than 1 mg should be written
- 20 in micrograms."
- 21 And elsewhere it says that the words:
- 22 "Micrograms and nanograms should not be
- 23 abbreviated."
- Q. So not to "mcq"?
- 25 A. Correct. Because there is a danger that the

- 1 prescription will be misread as milligrams and
- 2 that something will be misinterpreted. A
- 3 thousand-fold difference, you might say, "Well,
- 4 that's unlikely", but I have seen errors arising
- of ten-fold differences that were important when
- 6 prescription charts were misread. And I think
- 7 that this is very sound advice and there's a
- 8 lesson here that if you're writing doses of
- 9 micrograms, take the time to write it out in
- 10 full.
- 11 Q. Okay.
- 12 A. But it's clear "mcg" and it's unlikely that an
- 13 error would be made, but nonetheless, one likes
- 14 to see things done properly.
- 15 Below midazolam, you think says "120"; maybe
- 16 it does. It could be 130. I'm not sure what it
- 17 says, but it's certainly not 12. But that's the
- 18 previous loading dose.
- 19 Curiously, it's not signed off as having been
- 20 given and I don't know what that implies but it's
- 21 signed to be given but not as having been given.
- Okay, so the dose to be given is 2 mcg per
- 23 kilogram per minute. If we go to the next page
- 24 which you brought up which is the calculation of
- 25 the dose ...

- 1 Q. Yes, 090-022-055.
- 2 A. At the top we've talked about the wrong
- 3 loading dose, but the maintenance dose is 2 mcg
- 4 per kilogram per minute; a 24 kg child, 48
- 5 micrograms per minute, multiplied by 60, 2,880,
- 6 2.88 milligrams per hour, 69 milligrams per 24
- 7 hours. That calculation, as far as I can see, is
- 8 correct.
- 9 Q. Yes.
- 10 A. But the arithmetic has not been done properly.
- 11 How are you going to give that? Well, it's going
- 12 to be given in 50 ml of normal saline I think you
- 13 said. Can we go to that page that says that?
- 14 Q. Yes, that's the IV fluids. It's at 090 038 136.
- 15 A. So here we have 69 milligrams. It looks as if
- 16 it's been changed from something. It could be 64
- 17 but that's not a major problem; 69 milligrams of
- 18 Midazolam to be given in 50 ml presumably, again
- 19 not clear, but one would infer that 50 ml of
- 20 normal saline, that's .9 per cent sodium chloride
- 21 so there's 69 milligrams in 50 ml. That's a
- 22 concentration of 1.4 roughly milligrams per
- 23 millilitre and that is to be infused at a rate of
- 24 1 ml or 2 ml per hour. So that's 2.8 milligrams
- 25 per hour multiplied by 24 gives you about 69

- 1 roughly milligrams in the day. So that is a
- 2 correct calculation.
- 3 Q. Yes but then the nurse notes that it is to be
- 4 increased and that's to carry on up till 3 ml an
- 5 hour and you see that at 090 041 41.
- 6 A. Then the instruction is to increase by it should
- 7 be 0.1. Again the BNF is very clear on this. If
- 8 you're writing fractions, you should put a
- 9 preliminary zero in case the dot is missed.
- 10 O. Mm hmm.
- 11 A. It's unlikely that that instruction would be
- 12 misunderstood but nonetheless there is a
- 13 principle to be followed which would be 0.1 ml
- 14 every five minutes until up to 3 ml per hour. So
- 15 that means ten times .1 over 50 minutes the dose
- 16 is to be increased from 69 milligrams per 24
- 17 hours by 50 per cent so we add half of 69, 39.5,
- 18 that's about 109 milligrams per day, 50 per cent
- 19 more than was originally intended.
- 20 Q. Is it obvious to you from the notes and records
- 21 where that comes from? One can see potentially a
- 22 change in the rewritten prescription at 090 026
- 23 073. Although it's actually quite difficult to
- 24 see that but on that second line, that might be
- 25 where that's happening.

- 1 A. Yes, if you could just enlarge that because it is
- 2 difficult to see, yeah. So he, or somebody, I
- 3 don't recognise the signature, has said, and as
- 4 you say it is difficult to read in the photocopy,
- 5 Midazolam 2 ml per minute, I guess, is it?
- 6 Q. Well, then next per hour.
- 7 A. Two ml per hour.
- 8 Q. Think you can then see the .1 ml an hour to --
- 9 A. I can see the .1 ml per --
- 10 Q. -- 3 ml an hour and then underneath --
- 11 A. Every five minutes.
- 12 Q. Yes.
- 13 A. Yes so that's where that instruction has come
- 14 from as you said and I presume that that is what
- 15 it's saying.
- 16 Q. This is a different doctor who rewrote this and
- 17 signed this off. Given that all of this therapy
- 18 is actually being directed by the paediatric
- 19 neurologist and he is the person who has been
- 20 directing the Midazolam part of this, in fact,
- 21 all of it really, but certainly the Midazolam,
- 22 and his original instruction was correctly taken
- 23 down by Dr Stephenson(?) as you've seen in the
- 24 clinical note, what do you think should have led
- 25 to a change like that?

- 1 A. I suppose that the obvious inference from this is
- 2 that the prescribing doctor thought that the
- 3 clinical response was not adequate and that an
- 4 increased dose was required. Looking at your
- 5 very helpful diagram at --
- 6 Q. 310 020 001.
- 7 A. -- at 020 001.
- 8 O. Yes.
- 9 A. What you see is that the increase -- whether the
- 10 prescription occurred at that time but the
- 11 increase in dose of Midazolam occurred just after
- 12 the episode of screaming and drawing up of the
- 13 arms at 9.00 pm. One might infer that that's why
- 14 the instruction to increase the dose of Midazolam
- 15 was given and she had already had two episodes
- 16 that could be interpreted as epileptic episodes,
- 17 having teeth tightened slightly, teeth clenched
- 18 and groaned. Whether one would interpret the
- 19 episode of screaming and drawing up of arms in
- 20 that same way I think you'd need to ask a
- 21 neurologist. To me, that suggests more that this
- 22 girl was perhaps in pain but it might be, I
- 23 suppose, interpreted that this was more evidence
- 24 of continuing epileptic activity.
- 25 Q. But given the view that you expressed earlier,

- 1 what are your comments on having increased the
- 2 Midazolam at this stage, as to the advisability
- 3 of that if I can put it that way?
- 4 A. Really that we still don't have a diagnosis that
- 5 shows that this medication is appropriate and so
- 6 we're in a hole and we're digging it deeper. It
- 7 might, had the diagnosis been correct, have been
- 8 appropriate or at least a reasonable strategy at
- 9 the time but in the absence of a diagnosis, I
- 10 feel very unhappy about it. As I say, in my
- 11 position as a general physician, I would have
- 12 been asking for help long before this. But given
- 13 that the diagnosis was not substantiated, you're
- 14 piling also Epilim here, you're adding drug to
- 15 increase the dose of a drug to treat a disease
- 16 that you haven't diagnosed.
- 17 Q. Yes and then if we just go finally in the set of
- 18 the anticonvulsants, if we just keep that up
- 19 there, there's the Epilim or the Sodium Valproate
- 20 and that was administered, as you can see there,
- 21 at 5.15 pm. Dr Webb's direction was to add IV
- 22 Sodium Valproate, sorry this is at 090 022 055,
- 23 you don't have to pull it up because this might
- 24 help you to answer, to add the IV Sodium
- 25 Valproate 20 ml per kilo IV bolus followed by an

- 1 infusion of 10 milligrams per kilo IV over 12
- 2 hours. That was the third part of his plan when
- 3 he came to examine Claire at 5.00 pm in the
- 4 afternoon. Can you give your view as to the
- 5 advisability of that?
- 6 A. We're adding another anti-epileptic drug again in
- 7 the absence of diagnosis so that the same
- 8 comments apply.
- 9 Q. There was to be I should say that -- if you see
- 10 under that Sodium Valproate you will see that
- 11 it's continued on as an infusion and that's
- 12 because that's what Dr Webb had wanted to happen
- 13 but it's far from clear, it should say that that
- 14 actually did happen, because if one goes to the
- 15 drugs and you can see at 090 026 075 right down
- 16 there at the bottom, yes, there you are you can
- see the Sodium Valproate 400 milligrams 5.15 pm
- 18 time administered. You can see it's signed for
- 19 and the person giving it who is Dr Sands, the
- 20 Registrar, has initialled it. Then above that in
- 21 the regular prescriptions, you can see that there
- 22 is the prescription for the continuous infusion
- 23 of Sodium Valproate but that's struck out and
- 24 when that prescription is rewritten at 090 026
- 25 073, it simply doesn't appear.

- 1 A. So it wasn't given.
- 2 Q. It looks like it wasn't given and I think Dr
- 3 Hughes, who is the person who has signed on that
- 4 and, in fact, rewrote that prescription, I think
- 5 her evidence was that she didn't give it or at
- 6 least she thinks she might not have given it. I
- 7 think that's more accurate. I'm not entirely
- 8 sure that there's a full recollection of
- 9 everything that happened. But so far as you're
- 10 concerned, if we pull back at the timeline we had
- of 310 020 001, what would have prompted that
- 12 decision not to carry out the infusion of Sodium
- 13 Valproate which otherwise would appear to have
- 14 carried on fairly proximate to the administration
- 15 of the bolus?
- 16 A. I'm having difficulty in deciding what prompted
- 17 the use of the drugs in the first place.
- 18 Q. I understand.
- 19 A. So it's hard to know why one would change one's
- 20 mind in the case of a drug that perhaps one would
- 21 not have given anyway. I can't speculate on
- 22 that.
- 23 Q. Thank you. I just have a few more questions at
- 24 least for my purposes to ask you. I know it has
- 25 been a very long afternoon but we are nearing the

- 1 end, at least from the point of view of the
- 2 things that I have to ask you. One question was
- 3 if one looks at the drugs singly or in
- 4 combination, could any of them have affected
- 5 Claire's white cell count, either by raising it
- 6 or lowering it? To help you, we have a schedule
- 7 that shows the blood cell count. It is 310 022
- 8 001. There you see them. Now, there is no
- 9 differential done so we can't help but this is
- 10 the information that was available so far as we
- 11 understand it.
- 12 A. I commented on these white cell counts in my -- I
- 13 mentioned them but didn't comment on them and the
- 14 first question I would ask, the count is 16,000,
- 15 units are slightly different nowadays, but that's
- 16 higher than the reference range as quoted above,
- 17 4 to 11.
- 18 Q. Yes.
- 19 A. My first question would be, "What's the
- 20 differential?" because white cells come in a
- 21 large variety. About 70 to 80 per cent of all
- 22 white cells in the blood are what are called
- 23 neutrophils because of the way they stain with
- 24 the particular kind of stain to which they are
- 25 completely neutral so they are called neutrophils

- 1 and they are indicative usually of bacterial
- 2 infection. Generally speaking, when a white cell
- 3 count rises to this level, it's usually because
- 4 of neutrophilia, an increase in neutrophils, and
- 5 one can say that that is consistent with a
- 6 bacterial infection. If, however, the increase
- 7 is predominantly in the number of lymphocytes,
- 8 which form about 15 to 20 per cent of the normal
- 9 count, then one makes other assumptions. One
- 10 says, "That is more like a viral infection" and
- 11 that is what was suspected in this case. So I
- 12 would really want to know the differential on
- 13 that count and I'm surprised that it's not
- 14 available. I would have thought that
- 15 laboratories should be giving that as a matter of
- 16 routine on the differential on a raised white
- 17 cell count in these circumstances. If they
- 18 didn't give it as routine, I would be phoning up
- 19 and saying, "Can you do a differential white cell
- 20 count please?"
- 21 Q. Would you be doing that because you want to see
- 22 if what is being administered has had any effect?
- 23 A. No, generally not. I would be using it as a
- 24 diagnostic question from the point of view of
- 25 bacterial or viral infection or some other effect

- 1 which I can come to later. But this was taken at
- 2 10.30 pm on the 21st which is before Claire -- is
- 3 that right, that's the --
- 4 Q. No, that's --
- 5 MALE SPEAKER: That's Monday night. She was admitted
- 6 on Monday night.
- 7 A. Yes, 10.30 pm on the 21st.
- 8 MALE SPEAKER: Yes.
- 9 A. Your chart shows that she received all the drugs
- 10 on the 22nd.
- 11 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: That's correct.
- 12 A. So it is not just unlikely but --
- 13 MALE SPEAKER: It can't be a reaction to the drugs.
- 14 A. It can't be a reaction to the drugs.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Just before you move on, when Professor
- 16 Cartwright gave evidence yesterday, he was really
- 17 taken aback by the fact that the printout which
- 18 gave the white cell count did not include the
- 19 differential and he said -- there's perhaps
- 20 something of a difference between him and
- 21 Professor Neville(?) in this because Professor
- 22 Cartwright was saying yesterday that this was a
- 23 standard calculation to be given in a printout
- 24 and had been for decades.
- 25 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Mr Chairman, we can call that up if

- 1 you wish to see some ...
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, please.
- 3 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: It's 090 032 108.
- 4 A. While we're doing that, I should say that, as I
- 5 said, I would expect the differential to be
- 6 reported in a raised white cell count and if it
- 7 were not, I would be phoning the laboratory to
- 8 ask what it was.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: The difference between him and
- 10 Professor Neville is this. What Professor
- 11 Cartwright said yesterday was that below
- 12 platelets in the left-hand column, below that, he
- 13 would expect automatically for the differential
- 14 to be printed.
- 15 A. I would expect it above platelets and below
- 16 leukocytes but the point is the same.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Right, okay. But you would expect it
- 18 as a standard part of this printout?
- 19 A. Yes.
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Right, and Professor Cartwright said
- 21 not just in 1996 but actually for some
- 22 considerable time before that?
- 23 A. Yes. Sir, I think that practices may vary from
- 24 hospital to hospital.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.

- 1 A. But in a case where the white cell count, the
- 2 leukocyte count, the white cell count is raised,
- 3 I would expect to be told what the differential
- 4 count was as a matter of routine.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Right and I think Professor Neville's
- 6 only -- this wasn't quite explored in the same
- 7 way as Professor Neville but he said if he got
- 8 that result, he would immediately ask the
- 9 laboratory for the differential. So either/or
- 10 but both of them seemed to say that this was the
- 11 natural and inevitable reaction to getting this
- 12 reading.
- 13 A. The first question you ask when you see a count
- of 16.5, "What's the differential?" It trips off
- 15 your tongue automatically.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: If that wasn't picked up on the Monday
- 17 night/Tuesday morning when the results came
- 18 through, it should certainly have been picked up
- on the ward round on Tuesday morning?
- 20 A. Yes.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Right.
- 22 A. There is a hint elsewhere of the differential
- 23 count here and it's from the lumbar puncture
- 24 result, the CSF, which I thought was rather
- 25 curious. I don't know if you can call it up.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: It's 090 022 ...
- 2 A. Very good. That's the cerebrospinal fluid
- 3 analysis on -- I'm not sure what the date is.
- 4 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: That would be the 23rd.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Curiously, it's dated the 24th, which
- 6 also seems to be ...
- 7 A. It's post mortem.
- 8 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Post mortem, sorry, yes.
- 9 A. Yes, it's post mortem. Now, what are
- 10 erythrocytes doing in the cerebrospinal fluid?
- 11 You don't normally expect to see erythrocytes in
- 12 the cerebrospinal fluid. If there has been a
- 13 subarachnoid haemorrhage, which we have no
- 14 evidence of in this case, there would be
- 15 erythrocytes but we have no evidence of that. So
- 16 why are there erythrocytes in this fluid? The
- 17 likeliest reason for that is what we call a
- 18 "bloody tap". When you take cerebrospinal fluid,
- 19 you stick a needle through one of the lumbar
- 20 spaces, the space between the two lumbar
- 21 vertebrae low down in the back and the needle
- 22 enters the space in which the cerebrospinal fluid
- 23 is to be found around the spinal cord. You do
- 24 that because at that point, the spinal cord runs
- 25 out and all you have are strands of nerves

- 1 hanging down from the end of the spinal cord. So
- 2 you're not going to go into the spinal cord
- 3 itself. You're going to be pushing aside the
- 4 fronds that hang down from the tip of the end of
- 5 the spinal cord, the cord itself. So you put
- 6 your needle in and you suck off spinal fluid.
- 7 Sometimes when the needle is going through on its
- 8 way to the spinal fluid, it hits a little blood
- 9 vessel and you suck up blood with it. That's
- 10 called a "bloody tap". I think that's what
- 11 happened here and you've got some leukocytes
- 12 roughly in proportion, as you would expect, to
- 13 the number of erythrocytes. I think this is a
- 14 bloody tap and you see that the 4,000 cells were
- 15 mostly lymphocytes. I can't prove it but I
- 16 suspect that this is telling us that the raised
- 17 white cell count was a lymphocytosis consistent
- 18 with a viral infection.
- 19 Q. Thank you. Just for the sake of completeness,
- 20 because I have been asked, could any of the
- 21 medication have affected her white cell counts
- the other way, reduce them in any way?
- 23 A. All drugs can reduce the white cell count. There
- 24 is no drug in my knowledge -- well, there might
- 25 be a few but there are reports of low white cell

- 1 counts due to almost any drug you can mention and
- 2 indeed a low white cell count, neutropoenia as
- 3 it's called or sometimes agranulocytosis when the
- 4 count is very, very low, is known as a designated
- 5 medical event, that because you can't tell what
- 6 it means, but what it means is that so often when
- 7 you get a low white cell count with no obvious
- 8 cause, it's due to a drug. You can bet your
- 9 bottom dollar it's due to a drug. What drug it
- 10 is, you can't always tell. So, any drug can
- 11 lower the blood -- the white cell count, yes, and
- 12 one never knows what is doing it.
- 13 Q. Could it have had the effect of lowering what
- 14 might otherwise be an even higher white cell
- 15 count associated with the viral infection?
- 16 A. Unlikely.
- 17 Q. Thank you.
- 18 A. Unlikely, because when a drug does that it pretty
- 19 much reduces the white cell count dramatically.
- 20 It would be unlikely to reduce a count of 20 to
- 21 16. I mean, it's conceivable, but I think it's
- 22 highly unlikely.
- 23 Q. Thank you.
- 24 A. Just for the sake of completeness, to answer the
- 25 question that, I think, as you've suggested sir,

- 1 is probably irrelevant, because the drugs were
- 2 taken after the raised white cell count. In
- 3 cases of allergic reactions, you can get a rise
- 4 in the count of -- of the type of leukocyte
- 5 that's known as an eosinophil, but we have no
- 6 evidence in this case that that was relevant.
- 7 That's just for the sake of completeness in
- 8 answering your question.
- 9 Q. Thank you. And could the drug therapy have had
- 10 any effect on her serum sodium levels?
- 11 A. She had a low serum sodium concentration.
- 12 Q. She did?
- 13 A. Hyponatraemia, low sodium in the blood. The
- 14 commonest cause of that is sodium -- excess
- 15 sodium loss from the body. And the commonest
- 16 cause of that is the use of a diuretic drug, a
- 17 water tablet conventionally called, which causes
- 18 increased loss of sodium and water. And she
- 19 wasn't, as far as I'm aware, being given any
- 20 diuretics.
- 21 The other major cause of hyponatraemia is
- 22 dilution of the sodium concentration by too much
- 23 fluid. I most commonly see this when I'm called
- 24 to the surgical wards to consult on a patient who
- 25 has a low serum sodium. And what has happened is

- 1 that the surgeons have given too much dextrose
- 2 and not given any saline after an operation and
- 3 they have diluted, diluted, the sodium
- 4 concentration down. We stop the dextrose and
- 5 give saline and the problem resolves.
- 6 In this case, the dilution is thought to
- 7 have occurred in a different way. And it's
- 8 through the secretion of a hormone that is
- 9 produced in the pituitary gland in the brain,
- 10 little gland that hangs down at the base of the
- 11 brain, and it secretes a hormone called ADH,
- 12 anti-diuretic hormone.
- Now, when we go to sleep at night, we secrete
- 14 anti-diuretic hormone. That's why we don't get
- 15 up to have to pass urine. However, the older
- 16 members of the -- the older members of the -- I
- 17 was going to say "audience", it's the wrong word
- 18 -- will know that they do get up at night to pass
- 19 urine, once, twice a night, maybe, sometimes
- 20 more. That's because you cease to secrete ADH at
- 21 night as you get older.
- The circadian rhythm of AHD changes, as you
- 23 get older you start secreting it more during the
- 24 day and less at night. So, remember that when
- 25 you're wakened in the morning, it's your brain

255

- 1 that isn't working properly, it's not your
- 2 bladder. You have failed to secrete ADH. If, on
- 3 the other hand, you secrete too much ADH then you
- 4 reduce the amount of water output, you build up
- 5 water and you dilute your sodium.
- 6 And there are ways of distinguishing these
- 7 different types of hyponatraemia. And the tests
- 8 here suggest secretion of ADH. And it's called
- 9 inappropriate, because normally ADH is secreted
- 10 in response to a change in the osmolality of the
- 11 blood. That means -- difficult concept. That
- 12 means the amount of sodium in the blood,
- 13 basically. It's more complicated than that. But
- 14 to put it simply, the more sodium you have the
- 15 more osmotic your blood is and ADH will respond
- 16 to that.
- 17 So, if you have a high sodium, the pituitary
- 18 switches on ADH, you retain more fluid and your
- 19 sodium is diluted, falls back. If your sodium is
- 20 low, you should switch off ADH. So, here you
- 21 have a low sodium, but you have increased ADH.
- 22 So, it's inappropriate. That's why it's called
- 23 the syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion.
- 24 So now your question is: could any of these
- 25 drugs have stimulated the secretion of ADH?

- 1 Because this does happen. There are reports of
- 2 this. And some drugs do. I believe that none of
- 3 these drugs does that. There have been reports
- 4 that valproate can do it, but they're few and
- 5 anecdotal. And I was learning only last week at
- 6 the International Society of Pharmacovigilance
- 7 that large study using the general practice
- 8 research database, as it used to be, showed that
- 9 there was no increased incidents of hyponatraemia
- 10 in patients taking valproate.
- 11 So, I'm pretty sure that none of the drugs
- 12 that we are talking about would have contributed
- 13 to the risk of hyponatraemia.
- 14 A. Thank you very much. I think I've probably just
- 15 got two more questions to ask.
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: Sorry. Just one small point before we
- 17 leave that.
- 18 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: Claire's vomiting would have had some
- 20 affect on the --
- 21 A. Small affect, yes. Vomiting tends to affect the
- 22 potassium more, but it could affect the sodium as
- 23 well. You will lose salt and water, yes. So, it
- 24 might have had a bit of an affect. I wouldn't
- 25 count it as major though, in this setting.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: No, okay.
- 2 A. And certainly not, inappropriate ADH secretion,
- 3 because the tests do suggest that very strongly.
- 4 That that was the diagnosis.
- 5 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes --
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: What test is the doctor referring to?
- 7 A. Yes. You start with the serum test, serum sodium
- 8 potassium and urea. Normally if you have a low
- 9 sodium, you tend to have a high potassium. The
- 10 two go in opposite directions. If they're both
- 11 low and the urea is low as well, that suggests
- 12 dilution. Everything is low, because there's too
- 13 much water, simple. You then measure the
- 14 osmolality of the serum and the osmolality of the
- 15 urine, how much sodium tension there is, if you
- 16 like, in those two things. If they don't match
- 17 or if they match in a particular way then you can
- 18 diagnose what the cause of the low sodium is.
- 19 So, those are the test on which I would base
- 20 a diagnosis of inappropriate secretion.
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: SIADH rather than fluid overload was
- the cause.
- 23 A. Well, fluid overload is, of course, the secondary
- 24 effect of SIADH. It's fluid retention. But, if
- 25 by fluid overload you mean excess administration

- 1 of fluid --
- 2 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 3 A. Yes, then I would agree with what you said. That
- 4 it's -- that the test diagnose SIADH rather than
- 5 excess fluid administration.
- 6 THE CHAIRMAN: Why is that?
- 7 A. Because the osmolalities would be different in --
- 8 if there was overload, because the pituitary
- 9 would respond normally to the dilution whereas
- 10 here it's -- it's inappropriate.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: The only osmolality I can put my finger
- on at the moment is 090-022-057. You can see in
- 13 the left-hand margin, there it is.
- 14 A. Can you enlarge that?
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 16 A. Yes, 249(?). It's low serum osmolality.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: That helps you to suggest that it's
- 18 SIADH rather than ...
- 19 A. Yes, but I would like to see the urine osmolality
- 20 as well. Now, you can -- you don't have to
- 21 measure the urine osmolality, you could calculate
- 22 it if you knew the urine, sodium and potassium.
- 23 But, I would like to see the urine osmolality
- 24 too.
- 25 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you.

- 1 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: I think that's a difficulty. They
- 2 might not have done that earlier.
- 3 A. Right.
- 4 Q. There are only two records of her serum sodium
- 5 levels taken. One is the evening of her
- 6 admission and you see the result of that on 090-
- 7 022-052. See that's taken down there. We don't
- 8 exactly know who did it, but in any event that is
- 9 the details that come through. Then after that,
- 10 one sees it --
- 11 A. As for there, I would expect the osmolality to be
- 12 roughly normal, because the sodium is not -- it's
- 13 low, but not greatly low.
- 14 Q. Yes. Then we go to 090-022-056 and just at the
- 15 top there. Somebody correct me if I'm wrong, but
- 16 we have not been able to get the lab result that
- 17 relates to this. But, in any event, maybe it was
- 18 phoned through and it's just been mislaid. But,
- 19 that's the only detail that we have. This is
- 20 from the bloods taken earlier that evening.
- 21 Until you come to the one which Mr Sephton showed
- 22 you, that's really all that we have.
- 23 A. It says here: "Send urine for osmolality", which
- 24 is perfectly appropriate.
- 25 Q. Yes, it does.

- 1 A. And I had assumed that the subsequent diagnosis
- 2 was based on that result. You say there's no
- 3 urine osmolality measured?
- 4 Q. We've not been able to find the result of that.
- 5 It's not clear that any urine was actually taken
- 6 or measured after that time. So, that may be a
- 7 reason, but in any event we've not come across a
- 8 result that relates to that direction. Let me
- 9 put it that way.
- 10 A. In that case, my assumption is in doubt, in that
- 11 case, without the urine osmolality. I had
- 12 assumed that that was the basis on which it was
- 13 discovered. So, your question is very
- 14 appropriate.
- 15 Q. So, your point is, in that way you can't
- 16 distinguish between how the hyponatraemia arose?
- 17 A. I think, it could -- it could have been due to
- 18 fluid overload if there wasn't a matching urine
- 19 osmolality to confirm the diagnosis of SIADH.
- 20 Q. Yes. Well, as you see --
- 21 THE CHAIRMAN: Can you have combination of --
- 22 A. Sorry?
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Can you have a combination of SIADH --
- 24 A. Yes, you can. That can be difficult to diagnose,
- 25 of course. That complicates things.

- 1 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: But you can see from this note
- 2 that this is what the SHO in the evening was
- 3 querying?
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 Q. The thoughts that he got hyponatraemia and his
- 6 first line query was fluid overload and low
- 7 sodium fluids and then he queried the SIADH and
- 8 then he had some suggestions for how one might
- 9 address that. But, that was largely based on his
- 10 feeling that it might be fluid overload.
- 11 A. Yes.
- 12 Q. But, in any event, what I was seeking to clarify
- 13 with you is that so far as you can tell and in
- 14 your experience none of these drugs that were
- 15 being produced would have affected that
- 16 hyponatraemia condition that Claire developed, if
- 17 I can put it that way?
- 18 A. Correct.
- 19 Q. Whichever route she developed it by?
- 20 A. Indeed.
- 21 Q. Thank you. Then the last question that I was
- 22 going to ask you related to the brainstem test.
- 23 If we can pull that up at 090-045-148. You can
- 24 see that the first one was carried out at 6.00 am
- 25 in the morning and that's what I want to draw you

- 1 attention to. If you just see the answer, so
- 2 perhaps if I can take you to where the answer is.
- 3 Firstly (c):
- 4 "Could other drugs affecting ventilation or
- 5 level of consciousness have been responsible for
- 6 the patient's condition?"
- 7 There you see the answer: "No." I was asked
- 8 to ask you whether you believed that any
- 9 combination of those drubs could have
- 10 precipitated or contributed to her respiratory
- 11 arrest, which is something that happened at about
- 12 3.00 am on the Wednesday morning?
- 13 A. I apologise again for mis-remembering the order
- 14 of events here. What I was recalling was the
- 15 association between the respiratory arrest and
- 16 the midazolam.
- 17 Q. Yes.
- 18 A. Not the start of the midazolam, as I expressed at
- 19 that time, but the end of the midazolam.
- 20 Q. Well, maybe we can pull that chart up again, 310-
- 21 020-001. You see the green is the midazolam and
- 22 you see the respiratory arrest is that last red
- 23 line down there.
- 24 A. Yes. Which coincides with the end of the
- 25 transfusion.

- 1 Q. That was the question: is it possible that the
- 2 midazolam could have contributed to the
- 3 respiratory arrest?
- 4 A. Yes. Indeed it is. Any benzodiazepine carries a
- 5 risk.
- 6 Q. Now, many things are possible, so it's a matter
- 7 of getting some guidance as to whether it's
- 8 probable.
- 9 A. Again, I'm finding it difficult. I think it is
- 10 certainly possible and more possible than the
- 11 possibility I was talking about before. And it
- 12 could be bordering on the probable. In other
- 13 words if we were on the cusp of the balance of
- 14 probability, I think it is possible that we are
- 15 close to it, if not actually over it. It is
- 16 difficult to be sure if the midazolam alone did
- 17 it. It increases the probability even more if
- one considers that there's still phenytoin on
- 19 board.
- 20 Perhaps even a little diazepam, although I
- 21 would discount that by that time. As your dotted
- 22 lines helpfully show, these are the lines that
- 23 show one half-life and so at least half of the
- 24 drug is expected to be present at the end of that
- 25 dotted line. So, there is still some drug of

- 1 midazolam. That might not be hugely important.
- 2 But, there is still a fair bit of phenytoin,
- 3 given that we know that there was a toxic
- 4 concentration measured at the times we know
- 5 about.
- 6 Even, I think there was one phenytoin
- 7 concentrate of 19, which is within the target
- 8 range, but is nonetheless high.
- 9 Q. I was going to take you to that. Phenytoin
- 10 level, you can see that at 090-031-101. There we
- 11 are.
- 12 A. Yes.
- 13 Q. It's not entirely clear when the bloods were
- 14 taken for that test, but it's thought that they
- 15 would have been taken when she was admitted to
- 16 paediatric intensive care, when a number of
- 17 things were being put in --
- 18 A. That's at about 3.00 am, I think. Is that right?
- 19 Q. Round about then.
- 20 A. Yes. That makes -- that makes sense.
- 21 Q. At that stage phenytoin level is 19.2. But the
- 22 target range, as you have already said, in
- 23 brackets, is 10 to 20. So, the question is: what
- 24 is the effect, if I can put it that way, of that
- 25 having been the concentration of phenytoin in her

- 1 system at round about 3.00 am and when the first
- 2 brainstem death test was done, which was at 6.00
- 3 am?
- 4 A. Well, perhaps we can deal with the respiratory
- 5 arrest.
- 6 Q. Yes, of course. I'm sorry. Yes.
- 7 A. Because on it's own, I would say, "Well, it's
- 8 high, but it's in the target range and I wouldn't
- 9 be very concerned about that". But she's also
- 10 receiving midazolam in a very high dose,
- 11 actually. If you look at the current
- 12 recommendations for midazolam, it's something
- 13 like 1 mg per kg per minute rather than 2 mg,
- 14 which is the thin infusion line, or 3 mg, which
- 15 is the thick infusion line. So, she was getting
- 16 quite a high dose of midazolam, I believe.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: And an overdose of phenytoin?
- 18 A. Not at that stage, an overdose.
- 19 THE CHAIRMAN: But she had received an overdose.
- 20 A. But she had received an overdose of phenytoin.
- 21 By that stage we're down to 19, which is just in
- 22 the target range.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay.
- 24 A. So, it's on its own, okay. But, in combination
- 25 with the high dose of midazolam one starts to

- 1 wonder whether those two drugs might in
- 2 combination have contributed to a respiratory
- 3 arrest. Now, given that this girl had other
- 4 things wrong with her, it appears, it's hard for
- 5 me to say that even on the balance of
- 6 probabilities those two drugs did it alone. But,
- 7 it is certainly possible and perhaps probable
- 8 that the combination of the two drugs plus
- 9 whatever else was going on contributed to the
- 10 respiratory arrest.
- 11 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you. Sorry. Can I just
- 12 pull that 310-020-001 up again. It's just a
- 13 follow on from what the chairman was putting to
- 14 you there. She had had that high dose of
- 15 phenytoin, but according to you, she's also had
- 16 much more midazolam to start off with than she
- 17 should have had.
- 18 A. Yes, I think so.
- 19 Q. Then she goes into, what you consider, even at
- 20 the first level of 2, was too high an infusion
- 21 rate and then that too high infusion rate is
- 22 increased yet further.
- 23 A. Yes. I think so. From consulting the doses that
- 24 are recommended for midazolam in patients with
- 25 status epilepticus.

- 1 Q. If we then go back to the brainstem death test or
- 2 the diagnosis of it, which is at 090-045-148 --
- 3 A. Just --
- 4 Q. I'm so sorry.
- 5 A. If I can just confirm that?
- 6 Q. Yes.
- 7 A. In -- again, in the current British National
- 8 Formulary for Children, again, nothing in the
- 9 1996 version, as far as I'm aware. But, in the
- 10 current edition it says: "Initially by
- 11 intravenous injection." And this is in a
- 12 neonate, so lower doses than one might want to
- 13 use:
- 14 "150 to 200 mg per kg followed by continuous
- 15 intravenous infusion of 60 mg per kg per hour."
- 16 That's 1 mg per kg per minute. I would
- 17 expect an older child -- well, it's hard to know,
- 18 but if that's the dose of a neonate, I think that
- 19 one suspects that 2 mg or even 3 mg is probably
- 20 too much. I can't -- again, I can't be sure
- 21 about that. But, according to the information
- 22 here -- oh, I'm sorry. I take that back. I was
- 23 looking at the wrong place:
- "Child 1 month to 18 years, 60 mg per kg per
- 25 hour."

- 1 So, that is true for that age group as well.
- 2 Q. So, it is too much.
- 3 A. It is true, yes. I was -- I'm sorry, I was
- 4 reading the neonatal section. It's the child 1
- 5 month to 18 years, exactly the same instructions
- 6 are given. And continuous intravenous infusion
- 7 of 60 mg per kg per hour is the -- is the initial
- 8 dose that's -- that's recommended. But then it
- 9 says:
- 10 "Increase by the same amount every 15
- 11 minutes until the seizure is controlled."
- 12 So, on the basis of that information, it's
- 13 perhaps reasonable to increase the dose the way
- 14 they increased it.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: That's the current edition?
- 16 A. This is the current edition.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Where would the doctor have got that
- 18 information in 1996?
- 19 A. Well, I don't know. I don't know. This is -- I
- 20 have to say, this is not a situation I find
- 21 myself in. Must make that clear. I'm not a
- 22 paediatric neurologist.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes.
- 24 A. And I'm making inferences from what I can read in
- 25 the texts. So, you really need to get an opinion

- 1 about that from someone who is experienced in the
- 2 field. But, my reading of it is that that may be
- 3 a high dose, but according to what I've just read
- 4 it may be reasonable to have used those doses,
- 5 assuming that you had a way of knowing that the
- 6 patient was or was not responding, which in this
- 7 case is difficult.
- 8 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Can you have a way of knowing that
- 9 without doing an EEG and when the patient is
- 10 essentially comatose?
- 11 A. Well, we've been there already and --
- 12 Q. Exactly.
- 13 A. By this time, unfortunately, there's so many
- 14 drugs on board that I'm not sure what an EEG
- 15 would show you. You'd need to talk to a
- 16 neurophysiologist about that.
- 17 Q. Then if we go to the particular part of the
- 18 brainstem death test, which is (c):
- 19 "Could other drugs affecting ventilation or
- 20 level of consciousness be responsible for the
- 21 patient's condition?"
- 22 Given what you have just said, which is a
- 23 sort of mixed picture about the possible effects
- 24 of the anticonvulsant therapy, would you have
- 25 considered it appropriate to have deferred the

- 1 test, not because anybody thinks it would
- 2 automatically make a difference to the
- 3 conclusion, but just for the priority of
- 4 commencing that test and answering in that way at
- 5 6.00 am in the morning?
- 6 A. You're talking about the question about could
- 7 other drugs affecting ventilation be responsible?
- 8 O. Yes.
- 9 A. If there is evidence that there are drugs in the
- 10 body, then I think you should wait. It's some
- 11 time since I did one of these tests --
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: On the basis of what you've just told
- 13 us over the last few minutes, doctor, you
- 14 couldn't probably answer no to that question,
- 15 could you?
- 16 A. I agree. If you look at the diagram 020-001, it
- 17 shows that there was still likely to be at least
- 18 phenytoin in the body at 6.00 am when the first
- 19 brainstem death test was carried out. We know
- 20 that at 0300, or we think that at 0300, the
- 21 plasma concentration or the serum concentration
- 22 of phenytoin was 19. This struck as a very long
- 23 half-life. That is confirmed by the fact that it
- 24 was 23 earlier on. Not much has changed,
- 25 although she's had an extra dose.

- 1 So that three hours later there's likely to
- 2 be quite a lot of phenytoin left in the body at
- 3 that point. Even 12 hours after that there may
- 4 well be phenytoin. Although I would now discount
- 5 the other drugs, including the diazepam, which I
- 6 think is now getting to be trivial. Even though
- 7 your diagram suggests there might be some there,
- 8 it's going to be very low and probably not
- 9 contributing in a major amount. But there is
- 10 still phenytoin and it's likely still to be
- 11 within the target range, even though no more has
- 12 been given.
- 13 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Can I then just take you to the
- 14 clinic note that Dr Webb enters, 090-022-058.
- 15 This is at 6.00 am and the brainstem test is
- 16 going to be carried out or is being carried out.
- 17 If you just see there's a sort of a second block
- 18 of his hand, just above his signature, and the
- 19 second line in that --
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: It starts CT?
- 21 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes, exactly, Mr Chairman.
- 22 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Beside where the arrow is, we'll
- 23 highlight those four lines.
- 24 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes, thank you very much. Could
- 25 you just enhance that a little bit: "CT

- 1 cerebral ..."
- 2 A. Herniation.
- 3 Q. Sorry, "Cerebral herniation." So, she's had the
- 4 CT scan: "Under no sedating / paralysing
- 5 medication." Would you consider, in the light of
- 6 what you've been saying and looking at, that to
- 7 be an accurate statement?
- 8 A. Well, I think that the presence of the phenytoin
- 9 would contradict that.
- 10 Q. If you were being asked for guidance on it, as a
- 11 clinical pharmacologist, when would you have
- 12 thought it would be better, from the point of
- 13 view of completing the form, not as I say, the
- 14 outcome, but for the point of view of completing
- 15 the form, when do you say it would have been
- 16 better to have started the first test?
- 17 A. Well, I think --
- 18 MR FORTUNE: (overspeaking)
- 19 A. More appropriate, given the answer that has to be
- 20 given to 3(c).
- 21 MR FORTUNE: Or clinically indicated.
- 22 A. Well, clinically indicated, of course, you can
- 23 carry out these tests at any time. But, the
- 24 answer you give to them depends on the clinical
- 25 condition, clearly. I would have wanted to have

- 1 repeated the phenytoin concentration. And I
- 2 would probably have said -- and this may be
- 3 erring on the side of caution, given that another
- 4 expert has suggested that a plasma concentration
- 5 of 23 is okay, with which I disagree, I would say
- 6 that I would want to see the plasma concentration
- 7 below 10 before I felt that the contribution of
- 8 phenytoin could be disregarded.
- 9 Q. Thank you.
- 10 MR FORTUNE: At what time, then rather than 6.00 am,
- 11 would Dr Aronson be considering carrying out the
- 12 first set of tests?
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: When the reading's below 10.
- 14 A. Well, I'd measure the concentration that morning
- 15 and see what it was. And if it was whatever, I
- 16 could make some theoretical calculations, based
- on now having three or more plasma concentration
- 18 measurements, very helpful information, now I can
- 19 model the plasma kinetics, the pharmacokinetics
- 20 of this drug, work out exactly how Claire is
- 21 handling the drug and predict, with a fair degree
- of certainty now, when it would fall below 10.
- 23 MR FORTUNE: Would that information normally be within
- 24 the province of a consultant paediatric
- 25 neurologist?

- 1 A. I don't know. I think that if someone is used to
- 2 using phenytoin and uses it a lot, then yes it
- 3 should be. But, I can't say on behalf of
- 4 paediatric neurologists.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: But the prescribing paediatric
- 6 neurologist would know that the phenytoin and, I
- 7 think you said, the midazolam could have been
- 8 responsible -- should have said that it could
- 9 have been responsible for Claire's condition. I
- 10 think you're saying that the answer to that
- 11 question, 1(c), should not have been, "No".
- 12 A. I'm sorry?
- 13 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Let's bring out 090-045-148.
- 14 The question that's being asked at (c), which
- 15 precedes the brainstem test is: could other drugs
- 16 which affect ventilation or level of
- 17 consciousness have been responsible for Claire's
- 18 condition? Now, your answer to that is that this
- 19 was actually verging over from possibility into
- 20 probability?
- 21 A. Depends what you mean by the patient's condition.
- 22 I was talking before about the respiratory
- 23 arrest. Now, it is possible, and I don't know
- 24 exactly where the probabilities rest, but it
- 25 seems to me not unlikely -- and on the -- let me

- 1 say, "Okay, on the balance of probabilities, it
- 2 is likely that the combination of the midazolam
- 3 and the phenytoin, perhaps the diazepam as well,
- 4 plus whatever condition Claire had that was --
- 5 that caused her original admission, perhaps a
- 6 viral encephalitis, I don't know, would in
- 7 combination have led to a respiratory arrest at
- 8 that time.
- 9 It's possible. And perhaps even on the
- 10 balance of probabilities. I don't know. But, I
- 11 might be pushed to say that.
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: All right.
- 13 A. So, she has a respiratory arrest and presumably
- 14 the next thing that happens as a result of that,
- 15 and here we have a chain of events, is that she
- 16 develops brainstem death. So, indirectly, yes,
- 17 we're talking about effective drugs plus the rest
- 18 of the condition. Whether she would have had a
- 19 respiratory arrest in despite of the drugs, I
- 20 can't say, I can't know.
- 21 At the time then that the first brainstem
- 22 death test occurs, I don't know whether I can
- 23 attribute the midazolam at this point, because
- there probably isn't much midazolam left in the
- 25 body at that point. It has a fast half-life.

- 1 But, I can at least say that we know that there
- 2 is phenytoin in the body at that stage. So, even
- 3 if we're not talking about the respiratory
- 4 arrest, there is a drug there that could in some
- 5 way contribute to the presentation.
- 6 And it would be worthwhile waiting for the
- 7 phenytoin to disappear to see if the brainstem
- 8 death test was in anyway changed.
- 9 THE CHAIRMAN: Well, let me put it another way,
- 10 doctor, in order to answer that question, "No",
- 11 one would have to be pretty confident in
- 12 excluding the phenytoin and the midazolam as a
- 13 possible cause?
- 14 A. I think so, yes.
- 15 THE CHAIRMAN: That is difficult to do, is it not?
- 16 A. Yes. Well, you've seen me struggling.
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes. But, surely, that's the point
- 18 about doing the brainstem test, if you can't
- 19 explain the contribution of these drugs as being
- 20 relevant then should you answer question 1(c) in
- 21 the negative?
- 22 A. Your default position should not be the negative.
- 23 THE CHAIRMAN: Mr Sephton.
- 24 MR SEPHTON: Could I just ask how the doctor's
- 25 construing question 1(c), because it's not

277

- 1 grammatical? Is the question: could other drugs
- 2 have been responsible for the patient's condition
- 3 at the time of the terminal event? Or does it
- 4 mean: could other drugs be responsible for the
- 5 patient's present condition? I suggest that the
- 6 second must be the case, because if you've come -
- 7 if the answer to the question is the first of
- 8 those possibilities, has some drug caused the
- 9 patient to be in an unconscious state and
- 10 remaining so, then the answer would be yes, not
- only at 6.00 am in the morning but also at 6.00
- 12 pm in the evening. It would always be the case.
- So, is not the issue: were the drugs at 6.00
- 14 am in the morning still effective to cause the
- 15 presentation of which the doctors are taking
- 16 cognisance?
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: That is a very perceptive question.
- 18 A. The word "been" here is, as you point out,
- 19 ungrammatical. Does it mean: could other drugs
- 20 be responsible currently as you are doing the
- 21 test, now, here and now? Or does it mean: could
- 22 other drugs have been responsible, as you
- 23 suggest, three hours ago when she had a
- 24 respiratory arrest?
- 25 In which case, as you say, respiratory

- 1 arrest, leading to irreversible brain death, it
- 2 would always have been responsible, even if the
- 3 drug was not present 48 hours later or whatever.
- 4 And I don't think one can tell, actually. I
- 5 don't -- I think I disagree that you can
- 6 necessarily come down on one side or the other of
- 7 that question. I don't know the answer.
- 8 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: I think, Dr Aronson, just finally,
- 9 just to clarify that, when you were answering the
- 10 Chairman I think you expressed it in two ways.
- 11 Firstly, you couldn't exclude the possibility
- 12 that some combination of those drugs, possibly
- 13 the phenytoin, but perhaps with some contribution
- 14 of midazolam, contributed in some way to her
- 15 respiratory arrest.
- 16 A. Correct.
- 17 Q. So, from that point of view, there could be a
- 18 causal relationship. Perhaps in combination with
- 19 other factors, but there could be a causal
- 20 relationship. Then, when you were asked about
- 21 her presenting condition, you were of the view,
- 22 perhaps no longer the midazolam, because that
- 23 would have reduced, but certainly the phenytoin.
- 24 There may be sufficient levels of phenytoin in
- 25 her to be contributing to her present state. As

- 1 I understand your answer.
- 2 A. Do you mean the brainstem death or the
- 3 respiratory arrest?
- 4 Q. The respiratory arrest, you've already answered,
- 5 but her state as it presents itself at the time,
- 6 at 6.00 am.
- 7 A. Yes, I think if, taking this question on board,
- 8 the word is "be" rather than "been", then I would
- 9 say, "Well, at this time, while I am doing the
- 10 test, I know that there is phenytoin in the
- 11 patient's system. I would like to wait to see
- 12 what happens, to what her condition is like when
- 13 the phenytoin is no longer in the body". And I
- 14 would count that as a reasonable time to be below
- 15 10 mg per litre in the plasma.
- Other might say, "Well, a more purist
- 17 approach might be to say, 'Wait until it's
- 18 disappeared'". But, somewhere in that region
- 19 would be -- would be reasonable.
- 20 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you very much. Mr Chairman,
- 21 I have no further questions. I'm just going
- 22 to (overspeaking)
- 23 MR QUINN: [inaudible no microphone] I may make
- 24 them to my friend. But, the first point, if we
- 25 just set the scene. I'm aware of the time.

- 1 THE CHAIRMAN: I think you'll have to be. We've got a
- 2 taxi coming for you at 6.00 pm, doctor. So,
- 3 because of the circumstances you can do it
- 4 directly if you like.
- 5 MR QUINN: I'm obliged. We know that Claire's mother
- 6 was in the hospital between somewhere around 2.00
- 7 pm the rest of the day. And we know that she was
- 8 -- she saw Dr Webb there and we know that the
- 9 midazolam and the phenytoin was given during that
- 10 time.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: Sorry, this is 2.00 pm?
- 12 MR QUINN: This is the 22nd October between 2.00 pm
- 13 and say 9.00 pm that night.
- 14 THE CHAIRMAN: All right.
- 15 MR QUINN: We know that at some time in the
- 16 afternoon, some time between 3.00 pm and 3.30 pm
- 17 say, the phenytoin and the midazolam were given
- 18 to Claire. We know that.
- 19 A. Yes.
- 20 Q. We've heard you saying that midazolam is perhaps
- 21 an experimental drug and in this setting, in
- 22 1986, and that the phenytoin is something that
- 23 should be administered by using an EEG.
- 24 A. ECG.
- 25 Q. ECG, I apologise.

- 1 A. Making the diagnosis is the EEG. Giving the
- 2 phenytoin is the ECG.
- 3 Q. Yes. Two points arising out of that: should the
- 4 parents or Mrs Roberts have been told about the
- 5 risks of phenytoin, that is administering it at
- 6 all, given that it could create problems with the
- 7 heart?
- 8 A. I think that I would not normally say to
- 9 relatives that that was the case. I think what I
- 10 would say is, "Your daughter appears to have
- 11 status epilepticus (let's just assume that's the
- 12 diagnosis). It has been difficult to manage. We
- 13 have given her the first line drug, which hasn't
- 14 worked. I think that this second line drug might
- 15 be beneficial and we're going to administer it
- 16 with careful monitoring of her condition". I
- 17 think that's what I would say. I don't think I
- 18 would specify that there was a risk of a cardiac
- 19 arrhythmia.
- 20 Q. Would it be appropriate to say nothing at all?
- 21 A. If they were there and available for discussion,
- 22 I think that one would be duty bound to tell them
- 23 what you were doing.
- Q. The second point is, you've used the description
- of midazolam as "experimental".

- 1 A. It was certainly -- in 1996, it was not licensed
- 2 for this indication, not mentioned in the BNF and
- 3 the paper on which its use was based was a small
- 4 open perspective study in 24 patients. I call
- 5 that, yes, experimental, if you like, in an early
- 6 stage of its use.
- 7 Q. Then should the parents have been advised of that
- 8 fact?
- 9 A. Yes, that's -- I think that's a difficult
- 10 question to answer about informed consent. And I
- 11 was at one time chairman of the Oxford Research
- 12 Ethics Committee and this was a question we dealt
- 13 with not infrequently and I find it difficult to
- 14 answer. There are dual standards in healthcare.
- 15 If you're doing a clinical trial then you have to
- 16 ask for informed consent --
- 17 Q. Well, let me make it easy, should they have been
- 18 told -- never mind the experimental aspect of it,
- 19 should the parents have been told that they were
- 20 going to give midazolam?
- 21 A. Yes. If I can finish what I was going to say.
- 22 Q. Yes, sorry.
- 23 A. I was going to say that in the context of a
- 24 formal clinical trial, we have to ask for
- 25 informed consent. In the context of treating a

- 1 patient with a drug that we think might or might
- 2 not work, we're not required to do so. I think
- 3 this case falls in between those two. It's not a
- 4 clinical trial, but on the other hand it's not an
- 5 established treatment.
- 6 And so I would -- I think -- I would like to
- 7 think that what I would do is to speak to the
- 8 relatives and say, "I'm going to try -- I'm now
- 9 going to try a treatment that is in the early
- 10 stages, although it has been tried elsewhere,
- 11 that we haven't used ourselves, we think might be
- 12 beneficial and probably relatively safe".
- 13 Q. How appropriate is it to say nothing at all?
- 14 A. I think that if the relatives are there and you
- 15 have a chance to speak to them, you should tell
- 16 them these things.
- 17 Q. The last point on midazolam. Given what you've
- 18 said about it and given the points that have been
- 19 made today about it, was it appropriate to raise
- 20 the infusion rate later on in the evening?
- 21 A. Yes. I -- as I've said, I find that a difficult
- 22 -- difficult to answer. I really don't know. At
- 23 this -- in 1996, I don't know what the
- 24 appropriate dosage would have been. According to
- 25 current standards as we've just read, that seems

- 1 not unreasonable. Whether it would have been
- 2 reasonable in 1996 I'm unable to say.
- 3 Q. If I move to another subject very quickly. Could
- 4 we bring up 310-011-001 and with that bring up
- 5 page 090-022-055. Now, we know that, from the
- 6 left-hand chart, that the Glasgow Scale's
- 7 dropping from -- if we look at 1.00 pm we know
- 8 it's dropping from 9 and then Dr Webb saw the
- 9 patient at 5.00 pm, 1700 hours, on the right-hand
- 10 page, we know that it's down to 6.
- 11 Bearing that in mind, and someone who's
- 12 looking for what is wrong with a very ill child,
- 13 would the doctor not be duty bound to check
- 14 through the notes to see what drugs have been
- 15 given and whether or not those drugs had been
- 16 calculated properly?
- 17 A. Yes.
- 18 Q. Just before you answer, I want you to fix with
- 19 this point --
- 20 THE CHAIRMAN: Mr Quinn, you got a yes.
- 21 MR QUINN: Yes, I know that. But, I want to just fix
- 22 this point doctor's mind. When one looks at the
- 23 sheet on the right-hand side, and we know that
- 24 there's nothing below the upper entry, when Dr
- 25 Webb appears at 5.00 pm. The calculation is

- 1 jumping out at you. Is that correct?
- 2 A. Show me.
- 3 Q. The calculation of 0.5 mg per kg, three lines
- 4 from the top.
- 5 A. Yes. Yes, 0.5 mg per kg, multiply by 24 kg, 12
- 6 mg.
- 7 THE CHAIRMAN: Yes, but the point is Dr Webb did see
- 8 Claire at about 5.00 pm. The Glasgow Coma Scale
- 9 score was low. Mr Quinn's point, that you've
- 10 accepted is, that that should have prompted him
- 11 to look through the notes. If he'd looked
- 12 through the notes, surely he should have seen
- 13 that the prescription of midazolam witness
- 14 statement more than triple what he had
- 15 instructed. And that seems to have been entirely
- 16 missed.
- 17 A. That seems a reasonable inference to make. I
- 18 should say that in retrospect -- and you're
- 19 saying at the time, which is different. In
- 20 retrospect I think those changes in the Glasgow
- 21 Coma Scale score, which could be partly
- 22 attributed to the drugs, probably were not
- 23 entirely attributable. But, your question is: at
- 24 the time should one investigate with a view to
- 25 thinking, "Could the drugs have caused that?"

- 1 And the answer to that is, "Yes".
- 2 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Could I ask one final point?
- 3 THE CHAIRMAN: That would be a final point would it.
- 4 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Mr Fortune, you can go and then don't
- 6 worry I will come back to you, Mr Counsell.
- 7 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you.
- 8 MR FORTUNE: It may seem a long time ago, but back on
- 9 31st May --
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: Sorry, just one second, if you're going
- 11 to raise another point Mr Fortune, I'm quite
- 12 happy for you to do that, but if anybody wants to
- 13 raise a follow on point about the question Mr
- 14 Quinn just asked. No?
- 15 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Yes. I was --
- 16 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Let Ms Anyadike-Danes ask her
- 17 follow on and then I'll come back to any other
- 18 issues.
- 19 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Sorry, Dr Aronson, it was one I
- 20 was asked to ask and it slipped my mind as I was
- 21 putting it. It is allied to Mr Quinn's point,
- 22 which is, if you had been not sufficiently
- 23 certain of this drug yourself, in the sense that
- 24 you've got to go back and check through your
- 25 notes and see what the dosage is and all that

- 1 sort of thing, which is what Dr Webb said he did,
- 2 if you had given that dose over the telephone to
- 3 a very junior doctor, which is who Dr Stevenson
- 4 was, when you had the opportunity thereafter, at
- 5 5.00 pm, to come to the ward and examine the
- 6 child and you actually are making your own note,
- 7 would it have been appropriate or prudent to have
- 8 just checked that the junior doctor had actually
- 9 done what you'd told him to do over the phone?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you.
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: Okay. Mr Fortune.
- 13 MR FORTUNE: Back on 31 May, Dr Haynes was asked about
- 14 brainstem death. For the benefit of Dr Aronson,
- 15 Dr Haynes is a consultant paediatric anaesthetist
- 16 at Newcastle. I believe at the Freeman. He was
- 17 asked at page 114, line 7, in answer to a
- 18 question from my learned friend:
- 19 "Can you just very briefly because I'm
- 20 conscious of the time (so am I) explain why it is
- in the protocol or, so far as you're concerned,
- 22 important to exclude these electrolyte
- 23 imbalances, if I can put it in that way, or to
- 24 rectify them?"
- 25 Answer:

- 1 "Brainstem death is a diagnosis made when a
- 2 patient is comatose, is on a ventilator and it is
- 3 important to exclude any reversible causes of
- 4 that coma. The first premise is that there has
- 5 to be an underlying demonstrated diagnosis, which
- 6 in Adam's case (this is Adam Strain) there most
- 7 certainly was. There has to be the knowledge,
- 8 and the wording is no stronger than that, that
- 9 there has to be a certainty that there is no
- 10 residual effect of any neuromuscular or sedative
- 11 drug or other intoxicating agents, which in
- 12 Adam's case none were present, then there has to
- 13 be the exclusion of metabolic and biochemical
- 14 causes of coma and that exclusion has to be made
- 15 before doctors making the test can go on and do
- 16 the test."
- 17 Firstly, having had it read to you, do you
- 18 understand what Dr Haynes was saying?
- 19 A. Yes, I understand and I agree with that. I think
- 20 that's perfectly appropriate. And the question
- 21 was: could the drugs present in Claire's body
- 22 have been -- have fallen under that rubric as you
- 23 just read it? I think they could.
- 24 THE CHAIRMAN: Thank you. Mr Counsell.
- 25 MR COUNSELL: Dr Aronson, I wonder if you could look

- 1 at, and it could be brought up on the screen,
- 2 page 14 of your report. So, that's reference
- 3 237-002-014. I wonder if you'd look towards the
- 4 bottom of the page. You begin a paragraph with
- 5 the words: "I have noted." You say:
- 6 "I have noted above that it is not clear
- 7 what dose of midazolam Claire was actually given.
- 8 Midazolam 120 mg, even if given over 24 hours, is
- 9 a very large dose and would have caused major
- 10 anaesthesia, coma, severe respiratory depression,
- 11 possibly death, as has been reported in adults."
- 12 I think that reference was a reference to an
- 13 alert by the National Patient Safety Agency,
- 14 isn't it? Can I just ask you this: knowing what
- 15 we know about Claire's condition, both at 3.25 pm
- 16 and in the hours that followed, can we
- 17 effectively rule out the possibility of her
- 18 having been given 120 mg?
- 19 A. Oh, yes. Oh, yes, absolutely. I answered that
- 20 question because the question was phrased -- and
- 21 the questions had been phrased to ask, "What
- 22 would 12 mg have done? What would 120 mg have
- 23 done?"
- 24 Q. I understand, doctor.
- 25 A. And that's why I --

- 1 Q. It's just been there in the background.
- 2 A. My own view is that it is highly unlikely that
- 3 Claire was ever given 120 mg of midazolam.
- 4 MR COUNSELL: Thank you very much.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: Is that everything? It's been a long
- 6 afternoon, doctor. Thank you very much for your
- 7 time. Your evidence is finished and you're free
- 8 to go.
- 9 (The witness withdrew)
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: Now, ladies and gentlemen, we're going
- 11 to sit on Monday with Dr Scott-Jupp. He, I
- 12 understand, has to leave by 4.00 pm at the
- 13 latest. He's available to us only for Monday.
- 14 We're then going to take Dr McFall on Tuesday and
- 15 I think it's at least possible that he will run
- 16 into Wednesday.
- 17 To get through Dr Scott-Jupp and not have
- 18 him as another witness who we want to have to
- 19 bring back or bring up in a video link or
- 20 whatever, can we start at 9.00 am? I think
- 21 that's our best chance of getting Dr Scott-Jupp
- 22 concluded on Monday. We'll then do Dr McFall on
- 23 Tuesday. He may run into Wednesday. Beyond him,
- 24 on Wednesday, if he does run into Wednesday, I'm
- 25 not clear what witnesses we have. The pathology

- 1 witnesses were not asked to give evidence and I
- 2 expect that's not quite ready yet.
- 3 We've got four sitting days next week and I
- 4 don't want to lose any, because when we're
- 5 running behind already I don't want to lose a day
- 6 or a day and a half. So, we will try as best we
- 7 can over the next 24 hours to identify all the
- 8 witnesses who are available for Wednesday, 14th,
- 9 November after Dr McFall finishes, if he isn't
- 10 finished on Tuesday, and into Thursday, 15th
- 11 November.
- 12 The next thing I should say to you is that
- 13 will bring us into Monday, 19 November. We will
- 14 not be sitting in the week of Monday, 19
- 15 November.
- 16 MR QUINN: Did you say the whole week?
- 17 THE CHAIRMAN: There has been some discussion about
- 18 that in the chambers, Mr Quinn, was welcoming a
- 19 break between clinical and governance. We're
- 20 going to have a break, but we won't quite finish
- 21 clinical, I'm afraid. But, we'll have enough of
- 22 it finished that we will be able to distribute
- the governance opening by Monday, 19th November,
- 24 so you would see the lines that we're picking p
- 25 for closer scrutiny in governance and the issues

- 1 that we want to address. We will circulate the
- 2 opening by 19th November.
- 3 Then on 26th November, we'll work on a
- 4 timetable for that, about the pathologists, any
- 5 opening addresses on governance and then sitting
- 6 on through. Okay?
- 7 MR FORTUNE: I thought previously you had indicated
- 8 that you would not be sitting on Monday, 26th
- 9 November and Tuesday, 27th November and perhaps
- 10 some of us have made arrangements, that are of a
- 11 personal nature or not, to be elsewhere.
- 12 THE CHAIRMAN: You might very well be right, Mr
- 13 Fortune. Let me see what we can do, because
- 14 there have been some change in circumstances at
- 15 our end and more information coming through on
- 16 various issues, so let me see. Sometimes what we
- 17 have been able to do, if one or two individuals
- 18 are not available, is to see how we can juggle
- 19 witnesses, so that witnesses who are called
- 20 during a day or two are less directly relevant to
- 21 one's particular client.
- 22 Sorry, it is your recollection that I said
- 23 we weren't sitting on 26th and 27th November?
- 24 MR FORTUNE: That was the information I received.
- 25 That you would be sitting on Wednesday, 28th

- 1 November, Thursday, 29th November and Friday,
- 2 30th November. I don't think I'm alone in that
- 3 recollection.
- 4 THE CHAIRMAN: No, sorry. I think that was maybe
- 5 given out towards the end of last week. Is that
- 6 right?
- 7 MR FORTUNE: Yes. In fact, it had been given out
- 8 previously, because I had already made some, I'll
- 9 be quite frank, personal arrangements for that
- 10 Monday and Tuesday.
- 11 THE CHAIRMAN: Well, I'll tell you what we'll do.
- 12 We'll liaise between now and the early part of
- 13 next week. We will be sitting, as I say, next
- 14 Monday, Tuesday. If anything that makes it all
- 15 the more urgent that we get through as many
- 16 witnesses as we can next week and identify all
- 17 the people who will attend. Ms Conlon will be
- 18 back with us on Monday and we'll pick that up at
- 19 that point. Okay?
- 20 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: I would ask, if we're going to sit
- 21 at 9.00 am and try and complete Dr Scott-Jupp's
- 22 evidence, of which there is quite a bit, if I
- 23 could just ask my learned friends if there are
- 24 any areas they specifically wish me to cover
- 25 there is now some time to do that. That they get

- 1 that to me, not in the early hours of Monday
- 2 morning, but sometime before then, so that I can
- 3 integrate those into the question, that would be
- 4 very helpful.
- 5 THE CHAIRMAN: I am tempted to say that a lesson from
- 6 today, is there much more evidence you can hear
- 7 without a stenographer? Anyway, thank you very
- 8 much.
- 9 MS ANYADIKE-DANES: Thank you very much, Mr Chairman.
- 10 THE CHAIRMAN: 9.00 am on Monday.
- 11 (5.56 pm)
- 12 (The hearing adjourned until Monday, 12th April at
- 13 9.00 am)